



For daily latest books please visit <https://novelsguru.com/>

And also visit my Facebook page, and like and share it

<https://www.facebook.com/groups/3345453369055623>

Thank you guys for downloading this book from my site please keep visiting <https://novelsguru.com/> for supporting me and also don't forget to share it with your friends.

Dear Friends please download these books direct from <https://novelsguru.com/> bookmark this site for latest African books, and also supporting me Thanks.

Prologue

“Please hear me out B, I am so sorry.”

Busi: “Not as sorry as I am. I tried and God knows I tried. I even let my gut down for you. I was willing to let go everything I believed in because of you.”

Kian: “I am so sorry my love it was very stupid of me it will never happen again.”

Busi: “I am not staying longer to see that happening. I love you God knows I do but there is a limit for everything.”

I was not losing my girl over this. I know I had made a number of mistakes and she had forgiven me but I had a feeling that this was the last straw. I had tasted her patience enough and I would have no one to blame except myself if she left me. I went down on my knees.

Kian: “Baby I am sorry. My chuckle dove.” She didn't even blink and I knew that this time around I was never going to win. I was

going to lose her either way. "Tell me what you want me to do and I will do it."

Busi: "Anything?"

Kian: "Yes my love

Advertisement

anything."

Busi: "I would like you to leave me alone so that I can live my life."

My heart skipped a beat and I was almost hyperventilating I didn't want her to see that.

Kian: "Please do not ask me to do that. I can do anything and I mean anything except that. I love you and I want to show you how sorry I am."

Busi: "You are sorry."

Kian: "Yes I am sorry."

Busi: "Okay I forgive you."

Kian: "You do?" I was smiling from ear to ear.

Busi: "Yes I do forgive you so that you won't live your life thinking that I have a grudge with you."

Kian: "What do you mean?"

Busi: "I mean I forgive you for all the wrongs you did on me. Now you can enjoy without me hovering over you."

Kian: "Baby, no please."

Busi: "I will never love anyone and I will never let my gut down because I compromised for you now look at what happened to me."

I was really losing her. I was nothing without her and I had no reason to be around this area anymore if I didn't have her there was no reason to even finish what I came here for. Dad was going to have to forgive me because I was not going to survive without her.

Kian: "Honey, I....."

Busi: "Yes I know that you are sorry and that you didn't mean for this to happen. I am also sorry I am not what you wanted in a picture of your perfect relationship."

Kian: "Baby please you are enough for me I was stupid and I will

Busi: "Have you realised that we have been going in circles for some time? "

Kian: "I wish I could turn back the time."

Busi: "We cannot so let us move on. I love you and I will always do but its time I let nature take its course."

She stood up and left me there kneeling like a fool I am. I didn't have anyone to blame except myself. I was not going to let her go. Even if it meant I grovelled I was going to do it. I wish I had been man enough but regretting was not going to get me anyway.

Let me tell you how I got here. My name is Kian Coetzee and this is how I got to this bumpy ride. Brace yourselves.

1

Growing up in a free South Africa as a white male people would think we were rich as whites. I have realised this is the perception amongst Africans black or white or brown or pink.

I beg to differ because I grew up in a democratic South Africa but I was neither in the upper class nor in the middle class. I was from the lower class in which our life didn't start like that because I was a happy child and we had everything until my mother decided to leave my father and I behind for a "mature rich man" her own words not mine. We were almost fine afterwards but my dad hit rock bottom before he could pick up the broken pieces.

If it wasn't for the Khumalos and the Langas we would have never made it that far. My dad picked up the pieces and made sure that the Khumalos and the Langas became the circle of our trusted friends. You might ask me where were the fellow Boers

to help us but I will tell you that, this is a fish eat fish world, dog chow dog world. The Khumalos and Langas were working for dad so they felt like their loyalty lied with my dad and I.

“Are you sleeping seun (son)?”

I snapped out of it because we were busy in the kraal it was that time of the year where we removed all the manure for the fertiliser and that particular year we were supposed to spread it in the vegetable gardens not in the fields.

Kian: “Nee pa, ek is nie. (No dad I am not)”

Pa: “You know that you have to be hands on Mdue and his family needs a break remember they are not our slaves.”

He was on a first name basis with Mr Khumalo and Mr Langa I only called them using their clan names because they taught me like that. The Langas were Xhosas and the Khumalos Zulus so I knew a bit of this and that I was a coloured I guess. Don't laugh at me. Okay back to the story.

Kian: “I know pa I wish your guy could get back to you soon.”

Pa: “The more reason to finish this because you will be leaving me soon.”

Kian: “My age mates will be graduating this year and I will be doing my first year next year.”

Pa: "It doesn't matter how you started or when. What matters is how you finish your journey. I know you are an average child but I believe you will make it and help me after you have graduated."

Kian: "I wanted this badly when I finished school but for now I am not so sure."

Pa: "What do you mean? Are you saying that you do not want to go anymore?"

Kian: "I do want to go but I am not as enthusiastic as before because as the years went by my hope of ever going to University diminished."

Pa: "Now that there is the light at the end of the tunnel please do."

Kian: "I will try pa."

Pa: "Do you know how many people are behind you on this even the Khumalos and the Langas are so happy; they are even willing to part with their hard earned cash so that you can have accommodation for the first three months."

Kian: "I know pa and I am willing to try now but Johannesburg is a big city that's why I am sceptic of going there."

Pa: "My guy only has contacts at Wits University if he had some in Durban it was going to be better because we are near."

Kian: "You see what I mean. I wish I were going to Durban."

Pa: "You will be fine; please do not think much about this."

Kian: "I hope I do not bump into Fiona."

Pa: "Do not even think about her. Wits is a big University so make sure you avoid her by all means necessary. Fiona and your mother were cut from the same cloth."

We both laughed he was right I would have to avoid her because I thought I didn't want to be heartbroken like my pa but I ended up going to the same woman who was just like my mother."

Kian: "I hope Mr Khumalo has not planned a party for me because he loves parties and his family now runs away from him because of parties."

We both laughed.

Pa: "Leave Mdue alone he loves parties it's in his blood and I think I am now sick because he gave me the disease too. I feel empty when I go a few months without his parties."

I laughed because dad was uptight so I hear; he became grumpy when my mother left us and when he was bankrupt and the Khumalos and the Langas stuck with him when they were not supposed to; he loosened up and we became one big

family. They helped him save the farm when it was about to be re-possessed by the bank.

Kian: "I think I am going to miss the party animal less because I don't love parties but I will miss his protectiveness. If it wasn't for him we would be homeless. He is the one who persuaded the Langas to stay this long."

Pa: "Told you he is my buddy."

Kian: "Drinking buddy."

We laughed and finished. It was blazing hot and we were going to rest for the day. Hard labour was all I knew and loved, I was hoping if ever I got married I was going to move back home but as for the time I was preparing to go to Wits I was still hurt. Fiona had done a number on my heart.

We stayed in a farm in Mooi River my dad got married there with my mom and he said they were madly in love. My ouma and oupa settled there when they got to South Africa so my dad only knew that place as home. He was home schooled and he further studied Agriculture in Durban.

When mom left him for a drifter who had money he broke down and almost lost everything. He got a wakeup call when Mr Khumalo took a loan for him to save our farm. They never left us so that is why my pa ended up give each family a portion of the farm. They continued to work with dad not for dad. They

were stubborn but I liked it because it saved our family legacy. Both families had children but they were all over the country some because of school but some because of work. I was the only one who was stuck because my marks were not that good for me to get a bursary from the government.

I applied to different companies to no avail. My dad then bumped into an old friend who had connections at Wits. The company only offered kids who attended at Wits so I was waiting eagerly to get a positive answer. We never heard from my mother ever since even her family who had a farm also in Mooi River. Only ouma was left there and she loved me with all she got. Ouma Corli Du Toit was the love of my life. She was my first love and I so wished my mom could have loved me like she did then maybe she would have stayed.

Fiona let me see: I do not even want to dwell on her because she broke my heart I will find courage to tell you about her one day because for now I am still too emotional. I was going to go and make my family proud. I had always made sure I kept in touch with the world and read a lot because an idle mind does not help.

“Why are you sitting alone like a beggar?”

I laughed because that could only be Mr Khumalo.

Kian: “Baba Khumalo hayi manje (Not now).”

He laughed because my ascent was always funny to him.

Khumalo: "Do not over think. Your dad told me about the talk."

There we go again. Those two were like women; that's why Mrs Khumalo always laughed at them because you tell one of them something then the rest of Mooi would know. Especially when they were drunk they were chatter boxes.

Kian: "You and pa talk a lot."

Khumalo: "I am your father do not talk to me like that."

I laughed because that was always his way of avoiding the topic. He was a real Zulu man who didn't want to be questioned.

Kian: "Okay daddy dearest."

We laughed

Khumalo: "You will miss me when you are gone because some old men there where you are going might not take well to jokes."

Kian: "Do not worry I will be on my best behaviour

Advertisement

remember I am a Zulu warrior."

That always brought a smile to his face.

Khumalo: "You are coloured. A little Afrikaans, a little Zulu and a little Xhosa."

Kian: "What about English."

Khumalo: "Okay fine a quarter each then." We laughed. He got closer and became serious. "You know that you are all that your pa lives for? Without you then he ceases to exist." I just nodded because when he was that serious he was scary "Please I do not want him to go back to that place because you were a big boy when he got out of that dark place."

Kian: "Yes baba."

Khumalo: "Look at all the kids. They are gone doing better wherever they are and you are the only one stuck here. I do not want that for you. You are like my second son blood or no blood." He had girls and only one son who stayed in Mpumalanga. I nodded. "It pains me to see you stuck here. You are young and I want what's best for you. This farm is for us old people."

I laughed; at least there were workers who worked part time so they came in certain seasons.

"What are you doing to the child?"

We looked back and we saw Mrs Khumalo with a serious face.

Khumalo: “Nothing my love. I was telling him about this journey that is ahead of him.”

He said softly and I melted because the love they shared always made me envy them. People have a perception that black people can never love like whites. That’s a lie because as long as one has a heart and feelings then everyone is capable. She smiled at him and looked at me with a smile.

Mrs Khumalo: “I have prayed for this day to come and I know this is your time so make us proud son.”

The passion and love they had for us was so amazing I couldn’t even describe it because I saw how people of different colour were treated in surrounding farms. They all wished to come and work for pa but if only they knew how that bond was created through sweat, tears and blood they wouldn’t envy it. It took a lot of sacrifice for the family to be that beautiful.

Kian: “I will ma and when I come back a graduate I would love for baba to make a party for me.”

He whistled and we laughed with Mrs Khumalo.

Mrs Khumalo: “Now you have given him something to live for.”

Kian: “Yes that was my plan. I want all of you to live longer because I want to make sure you are there for my graduation.”

Khumalo: “Definitely I will be in the front row.”

We laughed

Mrs Khumalo: "I am even planning on taking Mrs Langa for a shopping spree for that. I know she has taste."

We laughed

Khumalo: "I think I will be broke by then. Four years is a long time."

We laughed because we knew he only parted with money when it was necessary or when they were going on the drinking spree with pa.

Kian: "I do not even want to comment."

Khumalo: "Good for you."

Mrs Khumalo: "Baba!"

Kian: "I am out of here."

I left them there playing like love struck teenagers and laughed while I went to the Langa home stead. One of his sons was home on leave so he brought books for me.

I took the bakkie because it always had fuel. Both families had their own cars but they used our farming equipments. Pa's orders because he said they do not need to waste more of their savings. When I got there I found him fixing the fence.

Kian: "In this heat tata?"

Langa: "In this heat I am still the man of the house so I am being roasted for having balls."

We laughed, he was the funny one.

Kian: "Why don't we castrate you and then we will solve the problems."

Langa: "Never I better roast in this sun for these balls."

The way he said it made me laugh more and Mrs Langa came out.

Mrs Langa: "Kian my baby."

She treated me like a little baby in fact all her kids and they hated it. I loved it because I never had motherly love so it made me feel loved.

Mr Langa: "This is a man stop making him a baby."

Mrs Langa: "They will always be my babies tata leave me alone."

Kian: "Leave her alone."

Langa: "Oho petticoat government."

We laughed because when the wife sheltered the kids like that he said they were under her petticoat government.

Mrs Langa: "You will pay for this."

Langa: "Sorry ma'am."

He said it playfully, we laughed hard. When I looked at the door my heart just melted.....

2

I never thought I would ever see Sambulo that good looking. He was working at Centurion since a year back.

Kian: "Wow!"

I didn't mean to let it out but it just did involuntarily.

Mr Langa: "I was amazed too. Go in he has good news."

I went towards the house. He was smiling. That is why I liked him more because he was always happy. I also loved Khumalo junior although he was always grumpy. Sam was my buddy to say. I always shortened their names because pronouncing vernacular names was always a struggle for me.

Sam: "Hay man you look different all grown and buff, are you working out?"

Kian: "Do not even start with me. I work out in the fields."

We laughed and he gave me a manly hug.

Sam: "Come in. I thought you were going to come early."

Kian: "You know how busy the farm becomes. There is no time to rest we only rest when we are asleep."

Sam: "You can say that again. I woke up early today but even at midday there was still a lot to do."

Kian: "See what I mean. So how are you?"

Sam: "I am good and it's good to see you."

Kian: "So you are on leave for how long?"

Sam: "It will be for only a few days. I got to sign a permanent contract."

Kian: "You what?"

Sam: "Yes man that is why I wanted to come and tell my parents in person because it was going to be inappropriate over the phone."

I was smiling from ear to ear like a fool and I stood up then hugged him again. It felt like it was my success. Growing up in the farm we really struggled as kids so they really deserved it.

Kian: "That was quick."

Sam: "A post opened up and I was so determined to get it I worked my butt off."

Kian: "I can just imagine because I know you once you start working you don't stop."

Sam: "That is nothing compared to what we grew up doing and you know it. So when I got the post I was not surprised although it was received with hostility from other workers."

Kian: "It is expected; but just work harder to prove that they didn't make a wrong decision."

Sam: "I am planning to do that. I was on training last month when it was done I asked for a week off and then the hard part starts."

Kian: "Do not even stress, just be yourself."

Sam: "I will be. Enough about me, I heard the good news from dad."

Kian: "Well I am keeping my fingers crossed we are expecting him to get back to us next week."

Sam: "He will get back to you don't worry. If he won't then you will come and stay with me for a while and apply at a TVET maybe you will find a short course."

Kian: "Are you for real?"

Sam: "Yes I am for real. The farm is really for old people."

Kian: "You say as if you heard Khumalo say this."

We both laughed.

Sam: "He is right the farm is for old people. For now find something, who knows you might not even like the farm when you have already tasted the other life. If you still love it afterwards it's also fine at least you would have lived a little."

Kian: "You are right there is no harm in trying. I was sceptic but when I see you like this I feel motivated."

Sam: "See me like what?"

Kian: "Look at you. You have cleaned up well and I wouldn't have recognised you."

We laughed; he stood up and went to his room. He came back carrying a bag.

Sam: "I didn't know you were still a book worm."

Kian: "It keeps me busy."

Sam: "I wonder why then you were called an average student when you love reading."

Kian: "Those are two are different things."

Sam: "If you say so. You know I even pinched myself when I got my first pay cheque. Do you remember when we went to the Van De Mewre's farm to steal the potatoes for food? You were even scared you peed on your pants."

We laughed because it was funny at the moment but when it happened we were scared to death when we were caught.

Kian: “Those were the days and we ate as a family they believed the story we told them until that cruel man said it to my father’s face that I was a thief.”

Sam: “That man was cruel back then.”

Kian: “He is still cruel to me we only don’t see it because we have stopped caring about what he says.”

Sam: “You are right. Our dads really kept the family afloat. If I can be half of what these people are I will be happy.”

Kian: “Especially Mr Khumalo.”

Sam: “You can say that again. We should work hard and do something big for them. We grew up in poverty yes but they made sure that we dreamed like any other kid.”

Kian: “If you don’t dream then you are dead and you do not belong to this family.”

I tried imitating Mr Khumalo’s voice and we laughed.

Sam: “What they instilled in us is working. When I am in the world out there I feel confident because of how they groomed us.”

Kian: "People might think there is no life in the farms but they made sure we lived to the fullest."

Sam: "Some people do not even believe me when I say I grew up in a farm."

Kian: "Looking at you now I wouldn't believe it either."

Sam: "You need to change your wardrobe if you need to get laid."

I laughed hard.

Kian: "Who said I want to get laid? I am done with women."

Sam: "You are saying that because all you ever knew and saw was Fiona; when you get to Jorburg you will see God's creations and you will drool."

Kian: "For now I just want to finish with my studies because already I have wasted four years sitting at home."

Sam: "I hear you but the wardrobe issue will not be avoided."

Kian: "I will see for now pa is broke; I would not want to trouble him. He just bought new stuff for me."

Sam: "You mean the clothes that you usually wear in the farm."

I looked down because I knew there was nothing to ride home about.

Kian: "Okay I will see but not now."

Sam: "If you need it I am here for you. I can even take you shopping."

Kian: "That's too girly."

Sam: "You will be surprised what Nono taught me and it's working."

We laughed

Advertisement

Nono was his sister.

Kian: "She is an expert; no wonder she made it in the Modelling world. People will not even believe that we grew up together even if I tell them."

Sam: "I don't even tell them when they ask after seeing our pictures I just say I am a fan."

I was dead with laughter.

Kian: "At least I will have courage to stand up for myself I even have pictures to prove it."

Sam: "She will truly murder you."

Kian: "I am willing to take my chances."

We laughed and continued with our conversation. I left when it was already late and Mrs Langa gave me food to give to my pa as I had eaten dinner with them.

Pa: "So Sambulo is here for how long?"

Kian: "Only a few days pa. I am really happy."

Pa: "I am happy that he will be near you. Some of them are far and you know with distance people grow apart."

Kian: "You are right pa and we were even closer when growing up. Junior is far but I am good because he is Mr Grumpy."

Pa: "I would love to see Mdue's face when you say those things about his son."

We laughed.

Kian: "Am I lying pa?"

Pa: "Mmmmmm."

Kian: "I know you know that I know that you know that he is grumpy."

Pa: "Do not be smart with me. Give me the food I was starving. I think I will have to have a house helper because I will starve when you are gone. A not so old, beautiful lady; who is single."

Kian: "Pa!"

He was even smiling the pervert. At least he really needed someone because he never dated since.

Pa: "What?"

Kian: "I do not want to know about your love life."

Pa: "See how forward you are I only need that for help not for love. Who is going to help me clean and cook here? Especially cooking."

He was right, when dad cooked it was as if he used his feet not his hands.

Kian: "If you say so but I am too old to deal with stepmothers."

Pa: "I am still young to die of blue balls."

We laughed and I gave him his food. He was right he needed to live a little but I knew he was scared to get hurt again I had to try to encourage him not to go in deep.

Kian: "There is no harm in a little fun pa. No strings attached kind of thing."

Pa: "Do not put ideas in my head young man."

Kian: "Just saying though."

Pa: "Don't be clever on me."

We laughed and I went to my room to freshen up. I left him there eating I knew after a day we had he was going to pass out

in a sofa so it was going to be a hustle for me to take him to bed. On nights like those I usually checked on him frequently and when he was done I made sure I ran water for him then made sure he went to bed early.

Kian: "Are you done pa?"

Like I said he was about to pass out.

Pa: "Ja"

Kian: "Your water is ready."

Pa: "See what I mean. What will I be without you?"

Kian: "I think you are right we have to look for someone soon while I am still here. You know the ploughing season is near and it's the worst for you."

Pa: "Yes please I do not mind anyone even if it's a male helper because I will end up dying of exhaustion."

Kian: "I will talk to baba Khumalo he knows a lot of people."

Pa: "That's a good idea. If we don't I will be spending my nights in this sofa and I will not be able to work well in the field."

Kian: "Yes."

I fixed his bed while he took his bath and made sure his medication was ready then I went to my room to read. I had a

cellular phone but it was those receive and call type and I hardly used it because there was no one to talk to that much.

I read the first book and I didn't even regret taking it because I loved Sydney Sheldon and the book kept me awake part of the night. I so wish I had the zeal to read my school work like I did with novels. I was older and wiser I was going to try and pass for the people who were rallying behind me.

Pa: "Goeie more (good morning)

He said coming to the kitchen looking fresh when I was making breakfast for us.

Kian: "Dit gaan goed dankie, en self? (I am good and you?)"

Pa: "You didn't sleep last night."

Kian: "You know when I have a good read I hardly sleep."

Pa: "We have to finish before it gets hot."

Kian: "Yes pa."

Pa: "Sambulo was here he was driving to Durban he said to tell you that you mustn't go anywhere later he is coming with something for you."

Kian: "As if I have somewhere to go pa."

We laughed as I set down to eat breakfast.

Pa: "That will have to change seun. You are young you really need to live a little."

Kian: "Okay pa"

There was no need to argue with him because he was so persistent. We ate chatting about the season and what needed to be done.

We went to the kraal just after breakfast. We were almost done and the tractor was in good condition so it could pull two trailers. When we felt the heat increasing we had to leave for the following day. With that mounting heat we couldn't do it in the late afternoon so we did other things during that time of the year.

Sam: "You work too much these days that's why you look buff and sexy."

Kian: "Sies man, you don't say those things to a male."

We laughed

Pa: "He has to get a life. I am glad he will be leaving this place soon."

Sam: "I brought a present for you. I didn't know what to buy for you so I thought of this."

He gave me the gift bag then I opened it and my eyes just popped with the lump on my throat.....

3

Kian: "No man I can't"

Sam: "Yes you can that's my gift to you because you are going to the city and you will need to blend in."

I had tears clouding me; pa was just smiling from ear to ear.

Pa: "Thank you very much Sambulo at least there is minus one problem I was cracking my head on how I will buy a phone for him at least you made my day."

He was happy as if it was his phone. It was an iphone 6 and the latest version. I knew that because I heard from Van De Mewre boy when he was bragging to me. I was not good with phones but I knew it was expensive.

Kian: "It is very expensive and I"

Sam: "It is also convenient because we don't want you buying a phone every month, do we now?"

Kian: "You are right. Thank you very much Sam."

Sam: "You are welcome but this will help you research too before you get a laptop which I will manage to source for you midyear."

Kian: "You don't have to."

Sam: "Yes I don't have to but I want to."

Pa: "You are a life saver."

Sam: "I know he would have done the same for me."

Pa: "At least we will be happy knowing that he is safe and well taken care of because it is not easy to let you people go and stay far from us. We do worry all the time and we don't even sleep much."

Sam: "At least stress less so that he will also be able to concentrate at school."

Pa: "Yes I will now stress less. Thank you again Sambulo let me leave you youngsters to your talks."

He was laughing and air quoting the word "Talks" we just laughed.

Kian: "Thank you very much."

Sam: "You are welcome but I didn't buy this phone so that you can go around taking girls' numbers and chatting with them instead of doing your school work. Girls will always be there and most of them are distraction. Look at me I am done now working and I can get the girl I want so it was worth the wait. I know you are old enough to choose your girl but I would have loved for you to finish with your schooling first and start on a clean slate."

Kian: "I hear you and I assure you I will try my best and I doubt I will see any girl differently from Fiona."

Sam: "That one is another person you should stay away from because nothing good will ever come out from her. Stay away from her if you know what is best for you."

Kian: "I think I am over her."

Sam: "You might think that because you are far and you haven't seen each other for a while but once you see her again and make sure you have moved on then and only then will I believe you."

Kian: "If you say so. Now are you going to talk about girls the whole time or you are going to show me how to use this idiot-proof thing."

He laughed

Sam: "This is what I always miss when I am out there. You and dad, you always make my day with your remarks when I am here."

We laughed; went inside and he helped me with a few chores while we charged the phone. I told him about the idea of finding a helper for pa and he was also in agreement with the idea. Pa really needed all the help and all three families didn't have any youngsters left so it was going to be difficult.

Sam: "So let us set up your social media accounts."

Kian: "Are those necessary?"

Sam: "Trust me you will need them they make life easy for you when you are studying because you will find yourself in need of communication with other students in a time you don't even have airtime to call. What I will do is to make sure that you get data every month from there you will see how you use it. I will never buy it twice a month because that data will be for study and easy communication with you study buddies."

He seemed to know most of the things and if I was to blend in I had to listen to him because I wanted my stay there to be as less miserable as possible.

Kian: "At least I will have less stress. Thank you for this."

Sam: "My pleasure."

We sat the rest of the afternoon loading the applications and he was taking me step by step. I finished set up and he was satisfied that I can use it.

Kian: "I will ask you when I am stuck."

Sam: "Do not worry you will get the hang of it."

Kian: "So when are you going back."

Sam: "Tomorrow because I have to be at work the day after tomorrow."

Kian: "So soon."

Sam: "I only took few days off so I will have to start accumulating leave days now."

Kian: "I understand, which means that you won't be here December holidays."

Sam: "I highly doubt."

Kian: "It's okay at least the Khumalos, your sisters and little brother will be around."

Sam: "You will be busy preparing for varsity so do not celebrate. I know I have been there so you won't need any distraction I tell you."

Kian: "If you say so."

We finished and he left with pa giving him behavioural instructions. I knew I was going to get my share from the five of them when I was leaving. It was our life so we were used to it. We listened attentively as kids. Only Thabo who was the black sheep of the family and he never even hid it that he was going to die a gangster because he loved it. Well people are not the same so what were we going to do.

Sam: "I pity you; I think the few days before you leave will be the worst for you because all of them will give you a piece of their mind."

Kian: "What can we do?"

When he was gone pa told me not to cook because we were going to refuel the cars so we were going to buy takeaways. That was a relief for me. We had a quiet evening as usual.

The following week was like a walk in the eggshells because of anticipation. The day came for pa's friend to bring the news. To our surprise he was on time and all smiles when he saw me.

Him: "You are a hard worker; hopefully you will make your pa proud."

I just smiled and left them to talk while I went to my room. I was anxious but I would have to let adults talk first. It seemed as if they were talking forever so I just tried reading but it didn't help because I was very agitated to the last number. Finally they called me I was shaking like a leaf.

Pa: "Seun it is not good for a father to watch his child wasting years at home while other kids are out there making a life for themselves. It pained me daily to see you like that. I was hoping and praying that I won't leave this earth without fulfilling my duty as a father. Now I am given a chance. We are both given a chance so please make sure you use this wisely because this is

the last card we have left and we never even had a card before Mel came.”

My heart started beating normal. Pa with his long speeches, I was going to pee my pants

Mel: “I know your marks were not pleasing but I had to pull all the cards from my lucky charm bag so they finally gave you a chance. You.....”

I couldn’t wait for him to finish I just cried loudly I couldn’t help it. I was given an opportunity so I was going to make sure they never regret sending me to varsity.

Pa: “It’s okay now you can be whatever you dreamt of.”

Kian: “Thank you very much.”

I was even kneeling in front of them. Pa also had glassy eyes.

Mel: “Just work hard and do not make me regret making this decision.”

Kian: “Never, I will never that is a promise I am willing to keep.”

Mel: “Good now that makes me happy to have helped. You are not the first one I put through this programme

Advertisement

all my candidates has never let me down. If you do you will be the first one in 10 years I have worked there. I am not doing

any favours for you because of your skin colour. I have sent children from all walks of life so do not think your colour will get you anywhere. You will work as hard as the kids I put there and make us proud.”

I liked the man he was a straight talker and pa was just smiling.

Kian: “If you haven’t noticed in our family we all work regardless of colour and pa taught me to look beyond colour because the people who helped us from the muddy past didn’t look at our colour so we never looked back from there so colour or no colour I will make you proud.”

Mel: “Good because your dad is a good, hard working man and I would love to see him and these two men who are struggling to get you to varsity happy.”

Kian: “Yes sir”

Mel: “Good now I need those forms filled I will collect them next week and you will start looking for the things in that list. The accommodation for most of our students is outside campus and you will pay the first three months then we will re-pay you when your money comes through from there you will have to make sure your finances are in check we do not want you missing any classes because of poor management. We are not going to spoon feed you, I know the money is not that much but well calculated you will finish school. If you fail to manage

the finances then you are not worthy the programme we will cut your allowance or cut you off completely.”

It was going to be an uphill task but I was going to manage no matter what. I had come so far to let that slip away from me.

Pa: “He is managing the business finances for the three families I doubt he will have a problem. As for accommodation we had already budgeted for that as a family.”

Kian: “Not at all pa.”

Mel: “Good now I have to be in Durban for a seminar I will pass by after the seminar to collect the forms and the documents accompanying them.”

Kian: “No problem.”

Pa: “He will go to Durban too to make sure all the things wanted are covered and sent on time.”

Mel: “Good. Now if you may excuse me I will be on my way.”

We said our goodbye and pa took him to the car. He was driving a machine not a car. I couldn't wait to work and do things for myself too. “Hold your horses you need to pass first.” I was talking to myself.

Pa: “We have to work on the budget. I will meet with Khumalo and Langa tomorrow and we will decide how we are going to work this out.”

Kian: "We are not touching the business accounts."

Pa: "Never; we have saved so much there and all three families are looking forward for the purchase of another farm; so no we are never touching the business account rest assured."

Kian: "Okay pa."

I had renewed energy I was never looking back. When Mel came all the documents were in order he was happy. I was ecstatic that I was finally going to do something with my life.

Holidays came and some of the kids came Nono came too. Even though she was making money and a super model she was not a snob she loved her parents and the farm as long as she was not staying there for good. Her words not mine. We even took a number of pics so that people would believe me when I tell them I grew up with her. Please do not tell her she hates publicity although she is always on tabloids.

Nono: "I will be going to Italy next year hopefully I will come see you before I go so that people will believe what they see not the pics."

Oh God was she a psychic or what?

Kian: "Okay super model but I am still older than you."

Nono: "Yes big bro."

We laughed; she was open and fun to be with just like his brother Sambulo.

Kian: "So how long will you be there?"

Nono: "I think for the whole year then I will be back home to rest for a few months."

Kian: "Do your parents approve though because I always hear pa's comments."

Nono: "They didn't approve at first but I sat down with them and now they never say it to my face that they disapprove."

Kian: "That is a good thing though."

Nono: "Although the extended family still gives me grief."

Kian: "It's their funeral let them be."

We laughed and she gave me some pointer to take note of when I got to varsity. I was glad everyone pitched in. Even the parents were there all the way. The holidays were over and it was time to leave. I was going to leave with Junior who was going to drop me in Johannesburg then drive to Mpumalanga after making sure I have settled in. His father's instructions, trust baba Khumalo to bully everyone into doing everything he wanted. It was always his way or no way at all. His son knew better than to argue he ended up cancelling his plans because he was supposed to go back to work in March.

Mr Khumalo: "Now I am not going to tell you how to behave there because my shambok is always ready and I won't mind coming there just to whip that black ass."

Junior: "Baba"

Kian: "My ass is not black."

Mr Khumalo: "It will always be black to be because you are my son."

They all laughed. Those old men I tell you they always found pleasure in torturing us."

Mrs Langa: "Leave the boy alone."

Pa: "He is right."

Mr Khumalo: "I was just saying."

Mrs Khumalo: "Please make us proud, you are the last child we are sending away so we do not want to regret that."

Kian: "Never, I will make sure I make you proud."

Mr Langa: "A man knows how to zip his pants."

Kian: "Tata!"

Mrs Khumalo: "He is right."

Oh there we go again. They were going to tell me all the tales but I was not complaining they were my family. Junior just

laughed and left me to their mercy. Ouma was also there she was happy that made me wish my mother were there too.

We finally said our goodbyes after the grilling and grinding.

Junior: "See why I only come home December this will last you the whole year."

We laughed as he drove off.

Kian: "I will miss this place truly because I loved being here and this was my life."

Junior: "Once you settle in you will miss it less and less."

Kian: "I doubt."

Junior: "Look at me."

He was right. Of all the kids Junior never wanted to leave the nest. He studied in Durban and every weekend he was home till he wrote his final year. Things changed when he moved to Mpumalanga.

Kian: "I guess you are right."

We talked about different things our drive was even shorter than I presumed. He helped me settle in I was lucky because our flats were fully furnished so I didn't need to even buy cutlery. Junior drove me to and fro up until I finished with my registrations then he left some money for me I was so grateful.

First day: let me see, it was the day of many changes in my life. I was going to be using a bus to and fro and the advantage was that there was a bus stop just in front of our gate. When I dropped off from the bus on my first day it was the first time I saw her. Oh God when I saw her face.....

4

I even sung that song in my mind.

“When I saw her face

I am a believer”

I snapped out of it and went in as I swiped my entry card at the gate and went for my lectures. I was not going to mess up and let baba Khumalo whip my black ass. His word people not mine, you heard him. I guess I will always be black to him because colour didn't matter in our family.

I was early so I switched on the data in my phone and the messaged from my family flooded in. They were more than 100 even my dads and their wives had sent the messages, smses obviously wishing me a beautiful and blessed first day at varsity.

Thabo the black sheep also did and he had ewalleted money saying he was sorry he couldn't be there because of his business which was booming. I just laughed because I was even picturing his face when he was typing that sentence. I replied to all the messages and before I could call home a number of students came flooding in.

I switched my phone off and put it safely in my pocket. Most people didn't greet at all but I was going to get used to it because in the farm we even greeted the animals. Just kidding.

I was going to blend in no matter what. Then this other guy came and he was rude to me. I wondered because we were all first years. I was sitting down so he was not aware of my height I was also wearing a track-top to cover my biceps because I hated stares a lot.

Guy: “Hay you stupid oink (pig) this is my place and it will always be my place.”

Kian: “.....”

I didn’t want to say anything because I was building up some anger and I was not a good sight when I was angry.

Guy: “Didn’t you hear me?”

Guy2: “Hay Siya, just leave the boy alone we know that you were here before us and we might leave you in the same class because you are dump. If it wasn’t because of your rich dad you will be out there sniffing glue.”

I looked at the guy who was behind this Siya guy and he just smiled at me. He was well built too and bigger than this douche standing in front of me but his face looked very young.

Guy2: “Come this side new guy we will sit there in front I see you are the serious type.”

I didn’t take offense because he said it friendly and playfully. I stood up as I did it showed my posture and my chest protruded

from my top Siya swallowed hard I just looked at him and let him be.

Guy2: “You are really tall and well built someone we will really need here.”

Kian: “What?”

Guy2: “I started playing rugby for Wits since I was in grade 11 so we will have trials for the college team next week I want you there.”

He had this command in his voice but I wasn't intimidated because he was saying it in a friendly way.

Kian: “I don't know I have never played sports.”

Him: “You what?”

Kian: “Yes.”

Him: “You don't know what you are missing out. I am not playing for the college team as such I was in the club so I am going to go for trials too. I will teach you here and there because I am a busy man.” I looked at this boy who was saying that he was a busy man and I wanted to laugh. If only he knew that I was far older than him but I let him be. “We also do not want people who are not academically competitive so if you are like Siya there don't bother coming for trials.”

Yela. I laughed at myself because I was inwardly imitating baba Khumalo's voice while saying that word.

Kian: "Oh."

That's all I managed to say and the lecturer came then we started. It was not boring purser but I was blank I needed to research and read as Sambulo taught me how to research. When the lecture was done the guy who didn't even introduce himself just went.

Him: "Another thing Kian, stay away from girls they will distract you and then distract the team in the process through you."

Was I dreaming? This boy continued as if we never paused the conversation; he knew my name but I didn't know his. I am very sure I never even took out any of my books because we were only doing the introduction on that particular day. When I wanted to ask him all those questions he was gone as if I had been sitting alone. I was left hanging and confused. Was life that fast in Johannesburg that I couldn't even catch up with a mere boy?

I laughed at myself as I went out. I was free so I called Sambulo and told him what just happened he laughed at me hard.

Sam: "Welcome to varsity farm boy."

I laughed hard.

Kian: "I am even confused right now."

Sam: "You will be fine, don't worry. Try the rugby thing sports keep your mind active. It might boost your mark, who knows."

Kian: "I might join because of this mystery guy."

Sam: "I can just imagine your first day and you meet ghosts."

Kian: "He is a ghost for real."

We laughed finished our conversation and I called home. They were all happy to hear from me. I didn't tell them about my ghost friend I just told them that I was going to be fine and they were happy. I sat in the shade in the resting place and looked as students passed; I really felt out of place. Sambulo was right about the wardrobe but I was going to worry about that later because I didn't have money and my clothes were clean.

When I was going to my second lecture I saw the ghost and I laughed. He was going to the different direction I guess we were not attending the same lecture at that moment. I went in and my heart sank when I saw the Siya guy but I pretended to ignore him; it worked because he continued with his squad; I was okay as a loner I hope ghost was not going to be a handful because I was not in the mood for that.

My day was longer than the days I usually had in the farm. I was going to get used to that. When I got home I remembered I had to withdraw the money Thabo sent to me to buy food and

airtime for emergencies. I took the taxi money because the guy who was my neighbour was a fourth year student so he had oriented me a little. When I was on my way to the taxi stop a GTI stopped next to me I wanted to ignore it but the driver opened the window. It was ghost and I just said it without even thinking.

Kian: "Ghost."

Ghost: "What?"

Kian: "Oh snap."

Ghost: "No, no

Advertisement

no, no, no what did you just call me?"

Kian: "What did you expect you didn't tell me your name and you just disappeared after the lecture?"

Ghost: "I told you I was a busy man."

We both laughed. He was too clever to be a first year student but he was also too childish to be in any other year.

Kian: "What?"

Ghost: "I am Thuto and not ghost but I don't mind it's not a bad nickname at all."

We laughed

Kian: "But you are...."

Ghost: "Yes I know I am coloured but I am Thuto because my mom is Tswana and she always win in everything that's why we have vernacular names."

Kian: "Oh I see."

Ghost: "Where are you going?"

Kian: "I need cash then I will buy food afterwards."

Ghost: "A farm boy like you will get robbed. Come I will take you."

The way he talked was difficult to be angry at him even if he said things that were hurtful.

Kian: "How did you know I was coming from a farm?"

I said as I got into the car.

Ghost: "Come on man the way you dress and the way you are so scared of people."

I laughed this boy was something else.

Kian: "Where are you from?"

Ghost: "I tasted all the life you may think of through my family's travels or my friends so you can never tell me about life."

Kian: "As young as you are?"

Ghost: "Do not underestimate me. I started travelling when I was in my diapers and mom says I said my first words at four months."

Kian: "What?"

Ghost: "She even has it on tape but I didn't want to watch it because I thought it was too creepy."

Maybe that's why he talked too much for a boy I just laughed it out.

Kian: "So why were you travelling?"

Ghost: "My dad was a merchandiser that is where he met mom merchandising."

Did this boy even think before talking?

Kian: "Is your dad from around?"

Ghost: "He was Scottish once upon a time but now he is Khasi."

Yeerrrrr I was going to be in trouble with this boy.

Kian: "How old are you and when did you finish school?"

Ghost: "You see this is a body of an athlete but as for my age I am just 16 and I finished matric at 15."

Kian: "What?"

Ghost: "Told you I just spoke when I was 4 months."

Was it even possible? How did he get his ID before 16, as if he read my mind he showed me his ID and he was really 16?

Kian: "How?"

Ghost: "I played for the national junior team when I was still in primary."

My head was spinning this boy was making me a dumper.

Kian: "Are you the only child."

Ghost: "No never I am the last born my brothers and sisters loved home more than me so they live with my dad's family and I am left with dad, mom and Zee my sister's child because the stupid sperm donor went AWOL. Can you believe he went to buy pampers and never came back."

I laughed hard at that time.

Kian: "Are you for real?"

Ghost: "Yes he said he will go get the diapers, he took my dad's black card and squandered the money my sister was devastated she then left and started a new life back home."

Kian: "Your life is full of drama. How many are you?"

Ghost: "Eight, three boys and five girls."

Kian: "Really?"

Ghost: "My parents love sex. Can you believe it if I tell you that they still have sex even these days?"

This boy was crazy. I thought baba Khumalo was crazy but he was nothing compared to ghost.

Kian: "They are married they have to."

Ghost: "That's why I do not want to date now because can you imagine I will be having sex from now till the end of time."

At that point I had hiccups from laughing.

Kian: "You are really crazy."

Ghost: "Here we are. So which bank are you using?"

Kian: "They ewalleted for me."

Ghost: "Okay inside Pick n Pay there are ATMs so let's go."

He helped me he even paid the difference when I wanted to return some items because my money was not enough saying those are some of the things he would love to eat when visiting me. I let him be because he was going to talk till the end of time and I was tired I needed rest.

Kian: "So your parents do not ask you when you are busy gallivanting at this time."

Ghost: "When the season starts I am like a robot my life is structured. It will be school, training, home and gym sometimes

and I do that with all my being so that's why off season my parents allow me to let loose because they know during the season I do not have time to socialise. I even ask permission to fart can you imagine."

This boy had a loose bolt in his head I tell you.

Kian: "Do you love sports?"

Ghost: "More than I love my parents because they don't love me back sometimes but the ball always loves me back and our love is mutual."

Kian: "Do you see yourself playing for national senior team."

Ghost: "Hell yes. I am even in the short list for next season."

Kian: "What?"

Ghost: "You are seriously staying in the cave. You must tell me when you are travelling home I will go with you there."

I laughed.

Kian: "You will never last a day."

Ghost: "You might be surprised dude. Are you serious with your school work because I want a study partner and I do not work with lazy bums?"

I was not going to let that one go because the fact that he was in tertiary at his age showed that he was a force to be reckoned with.

Kian: "I will be honoured to be your study partner but I am not spending my time with kids."

He laughed hard.

Ghost: "I told you I am a busy man and I will never hang out soon you will see what I mean when the season starts. I will only be coming for sleepovers and study only those will be the times you will get to see me and in class sometimes."

Kian: "Why sometimes."

Ghost: "I am always ahead I have a tutor so coming to class will be for the topics I couldn't cover and if you haven't noticed I get bored easily my IQ is very high so I can't afford to sit in lectures the whole day."

Wow it was as if I was in a movie I only heard and saw that in movies.

Kian: "Whatever man my head is spinning because of the information you gave me."

He laughed. You will be strong I told my inner self.

Ghost: "So tell me how old are you?"

Kian: "I will be turning 26 this year."

Ghost: "What? Never mind you are like the same age as the sixth born at home not bad."

Okay he took that well. He was not a snob and I truly liked him hopefully I was going to be able to keep up with his energy.

Kian: "Yah story of my life. Do you want to know about me?"

Ghost: "Yes please but let me call mom to bring changing clothes for me because I will be spending a night here."

What the.....

5

What did I get myself into? I was not complaining because I really needed someone and Ghost was the guy for me. He loved school and he was not into many friends from what I gathered.

While he was on the call I cooked something light to eat, I was really hungry and I bet he was too. When he finished his call he came to sit with me in the kitchen. The flat had a bedroom with a bathroom inside. The kitchen and the sitting area were not that big.

Ghost: "I will not sleep on that."

He was pointing at the food.

Kian: "What do you mean?"

Ghost: "I am an athlete dude what you just cooked is only a starter for a three course meal."

Kian: "Okay so what are you suggesting?"

Ghost: "We will cook a proper meal together. From today onwards I will be going with you to buy groceries because if I let you do it I will die of hunger when I visit here. Your food money will be used to buy snacks and for some movies from time to time."

I was really in deep but I loved it. At least he was not a parasite but I didn't want to use his money if it was illegal.

Kian: "Where do you get the money and I saw you were carrying a black card. I hope it is not illegal money."

He laughed sarcastically and when he saw that I was serious he stopped laughing.

Ghost: "Come on man I will never even once think of that not in this life time and not when my dad is alive anywhere he will murder me and feed me to his pitbulls then turn around and help the search party. When questioned he will even cry to the extent of having hiccups."

I laughed hard, he was really serious.

Kian: "I had to ask man I am afraid to get arrested."

Ghost: "Oh mighty Goliath afraid of cops. Do not worry I told you that my dad was a merchandiser he had investments around the globe he is the one who bought a car for me and he is paying nothing for my fees because I am a genius and I have two scholarships. He got away there because I wanted to milk him dry like my brothers and sisters. As for the black card dad put some money there every month but the majority comes from the club I play for and some when we play for the country I don't use it at once I put some there."

Kian: "They pay you to play!"

Ghost: "Dah it's a job so I now have work experience for my resumes."

I laughed hard.

Kian: "Do you even have a dull moment?"

Ghost: "Nope, I am a busy man I told you."

Kian: "Not like that silly. I mean are you always this happy?"

Ghost: "Why should I carry the weight of the world when Jesus already did for us?" At that point I really concluded that he was not really okay upstairs. As if he read my mind and I was beginning to think he was teleporting. "Just so you know I am as normal as they come."

I laughed as we finished cooking together. I poured some wine.

Kian: "Drink."

Ghost: "Nope not for me. I don't drink; not good for the body and have you forgotten that I am under 18?"

Kian: "Whatever dude."

Ghost: "You should try it you will see that you will live longer. You should see my dad you will think he is my brother. He doesn't drink he doesn't smoke and my mom too. Mom is aging these days because she stopped training."

Kian: "So your mom does sports too?"

Ghost: "We took from her. She was my coach up until last year when she got an injury then we hired a coach my dad is my manager."

Kian: "Wow I love your family already."

Ghost: "At least they love sex so it substituted those things. So she is exercising that way nowadays."

Kian: "You are sick."

He just laughed.

Ghost: "So tell me about your upbringing? Wait, hold that thought my mom is here."

He answered his phone and went outside. After a few minutes he came back with his mom. Oh snap I didn't know their family name.

Kian: "Hello ma'am."

They both looked at each other and laughed.

Her: "You didn't tell me that he was this hunky if only I was not married to your father."

I looked at her she was beautiful and you would swear she never had kids.

Ghost: "I won't tell dad it will be our secret."

Her: "That's a good idea." They looked serious and I was confused they just burst out with laughter "You should have seen your face."

Ghost: "I should have recoded him."

They laughed hard.

Her: "I am Mrs Bruis you must be Kian I have heard so much about you."

Kian: "Does your son really shut up for once?"

They laughed

Mrs Bruis: "I tried and failed to stop him and my advice

Advertisement

never try to change him because it will be like digging your own grave. "

Ghost: "Hello I am still here and I am not deaf."

We laughed. His mother looked young and hot you could swear she was his sister their smile was the same and they talked as if they were friends not mother and son.

Mrs Bruis: "Do you have food my babies? I do not want you starving. As for you young man you are supposed to be back on diet because the season will begin before you know it."

She was looking at Ghost. I smiled alone and realised that parents will never let their kids grow no matter what. She was even opening cardboards and the fridge.

Ghost: "We are just coming from Pick n Pay mom."

Mrs Bruis: "That is not food in there. Do you think it will even last a week? As for you if you don't want your friend to starve you should have added more food."

Ghost: "Mom!"

Mrs Bruis: "If this boy keeps visiting I know you will starve with only this food. Here you will add some more."

She opened her clash bag and removed a starch of rands without even counting. Left them in the table and herded to the door.

Mrs Bruis: "Keep well and do not be late for class tomorrow. Thuto your fuel card if in your bag, you had left it in your father's office."

Ghost: "Thank you mom you are a life saver."

They hugged and she hugged me too and left.

Kian: "Your mom."

Ghost: "I know she is beautiful right."

Kian: "Beyond, she is cool I so wish I had such a relationship with my mom."

I was becoming emotional.

Ghost: "So tell me about your childhood."

He had a serious face on and you would swear it was not the same playful boy I was talking to earlier on. I guess he was a friend sent to me from above. I never had a friend except my family and you wouldn't call that friendship because we had a family bond.

I told him everything and he listened without judgement. I even found myself talking to him about Fiona and it didn't even sound strange.

Ghost: "You have a beautiful family. I wish my mom's family could be like that. They are divided a lot that's why my siblings chose to stick with my dad's family."

Kian: "Our family stuck together through thick and thin that's why I want to make sure my dads are proud of me because I was the only one left at home with nothing to do."

Ghost: "You should work your black butt off."

We laughed because he was saying what I told him about baba Khumalo.

Kian: "You will get along with him I tell you."

Ghost: "I can't wait to meet them. As for Fiona I hope I don't meet her in this lifetime."

Kian: "Maybe she had her reasons."

Ghost: "Whatever man but I don't like her a bit."

Kian: "I think I am over her. I met someone."

Ghost: "Already!"

Kian: "I just saw her today and my heart skipped a bit."

Ghost: "Oh so you are fantasising it's not a sure thing."

I hit him playfully.

Kian: "I do not think she will look at me anyway."

Ghost: "Why do you say that? I don't think there is a type for certain things. From what you told me your family is extraordinary. Have you in your wildest dream thought you will have brothers of colour and a coloured friend."

Kian: "You are right but she looked classy to me."

Ghost: "Black or white."

Kian: "Black."

Ghost: "Wow, the opposite of Fiona."

Kian: "When I saw her face I even sang that song to myself man. I even pictured myself standing in at alter with my African queen." Ghost: "Wowowowo that serious."

Kian: "Yes and I never pictured Fiona that way."

Ghost: "There is no harm in having a little fun but my advice is first resolve issues with your ex and then move on. I am not a relationship expert because I am a mere kid but I know from my parents that love is a beautiful thing and if I am to love in future I would love the kind of love my parents share."

Kian: "You are right I always picture the love baba Khumalo and tata Langa have with their wives. They made me realise that if you love someone you cease to be selfish and you will be always happy."

Ghost: "You are not young at all and I would support any relationship you will have as long as you will not be distracted. Your family loves you and they will be disappointed if you fail."

Kian: "I will never forgive myself if I fail and fail them."

Ghost: "Then I will be here for you and support you. If you mess up your love life don't come running to me because I know nothing on that field. Now I saw you struggling today in the lecture room so come before we sleep I will explain to you and show you pointers of doing things."

Kian: "Okay thank you."

Ghost: "Do not thank me yet because if your head is thick I will un-friend you."

We both laughed. We tidied up in the kitchen; he went out to his car and brought two laptops, some books then we set in the study area. The bedroom had a study area which was not that big but it could accommodate three people.

Ghost: "This one is Zee's laptop. She wanted me to use it but then dad travelled to China and brought this baby. In the meantime you will be using it I will tell her and my parents. As for the router for the internet you will make a plan."

Kian: "Thank you very much."

I couldn't even contain my excitement and emotions I just let the tears flow.

Ghost: "Men do not cry. Now let us do this."

He explained to me about the introductions we had. Even the lecture he didn't attend he knew most of the things they talked about. To my surprise he was good and I understood him better than the lecturer himself.

Kian: "Tell me again. Why would you need a study buddy when you are this good?"

Ghost: "When I study alone I tend to relax and slacken so that's why I need you focused and serious."

Kian: "At your service sir."

We laughed and when we checked the time it was midnight. We made a light snack again because ghost was hungry. Lucky enough the bed was big enough. Ghost was not even a fussy person you wouldn't even believe that he was coming from a well up family.

Living in the farm helped me when it came to time keeping so I woke up early to my surprise ghost was up too.

Kian: "This early?"

Ghost: "I always train in the morning we have a gym at home so my time table never changed from there."

Kian: "We will get along fine."

Ghost: "See what I have been trying to tell you for donkey years."

We laughed and finished our morning routine. He made breakfast and it was a feast I tell you. His mom was right if I didn't want to starve as long as he was my friend we were supposed to buy more food.

Kian: "Your mom was right you do eat."

Ghost: "I am a man."

We laughed; finished our breakfast then we were on our way he dropped me on campus. At least I didn't have to wait for the bus. He attended all his lectures on that particular day but he was still a charter box.

The week went by smooth and my family was happy about ghost and they loved the fact that he had positive influence. They were also calling him ghost and he loved it. His mom bought groceries on top of the money she gave me so I had to buy a modem and data with the money she gave me. I was not going to slacken while ghost helped me so much.

Before I knew it the month was over and we were going to March. Ghost had gone with me for the trial he was picked but I wasn't because I was clueless so they took me for the amateur training and I was loving it. He was right sports revived my mind; I was always alert and doing well in my studies.

I was still thinking about my African queen. You might think I was not seriously thinking of defying my parents but I was also human. Then one day I was walking to the theatre when I saw her walking with two other girls the other one was also black but the other one was white and they were laughing. Her laugh stopped me on the track and my heart was beating fast I couldn't even breathe.

"Give it up oink she will never look at you twice."

I was irritated because it was Siya. Kian: "What do you mean?"

I tried acting normal but my voice betrayed me.

Siya: "You love Miss Ice queen I can see."

Kian: "Who told you that?"

Siya: "She is everyone's dream here at this varsity but she is an ice queen people, and I mean men and women have tried and failed. I even failed last year trying to impress her that's why people think I failed because I am dump. I am not dump I side tracked and Miss Ice queen is my everyday crush. But I am over her this year because I do not want to fail again my dad will disown me."

He was having a normal conversation and I was surprised. My mind was in the Ice queen as he said.

Kian: "Is that her name?"

Siya: "You are really from the alien planet. Who doesn't know her? Her mom is like the "it" thing in the entertainment industry here in Africa not even South Africa only her aunt is a Hollywood star married to another star.."

I was really backwards. He left me standing there without a clue. Then I had an epiphany.....

6

My lectures were finished and ghost was going for a game so I was going to take a bus back. I was used to him dropping me off sometimes. He even had his things in my flat. Even his mom suggested that we look for a bigger flat but we were busy for that. Assignments and preparations for the first semester exams so we studied; studied and studied some more. We only rested when we were going for training; I was not competitive yet so I had no games lined up.

When I got home I freshened up then cooked because I knew ghost was coming so that we finish the assignments which were due in two days' time. When done with cooking I took the laptop and connected the internet. I tried searching but I got stuck because he only said her mother was big in the entertainment industry but the industry was big and I didn't know where to begin. I tried the aunt who was in Hollywood but there were so many Africans there so I didn't know where to begin.

I called Sambulo

Sam: "Hay bro I was about to call you. You are a mind reader."

We both laughed

Kian: "I was not sure you were going to answer because you are always busy these days."

Sam: "I knocked off early we have a workshop which started today so the rest of the week I will be knocking off early."

Kian: "Lucky you."

Sam: "Before you say anything because I will forget. I will send money for your laptop as per promise."

Kian: "But I will receive my overdue rent money soon."

Sam: "That money will be for clothes and other things. I would have bought it here but at least you know what you need so I will give you the money."

I was emotional, I was really lucky to have this family. If I didn't realise it then I was realising it at that time.

Kian: "Thank you very much for your help I am grateful."

Sam: "Now you need to study hard. I hear that you did well in your previous assignments."

Kian: "With ghost on my tail I will never fail."

We both laughed

Sam: "I want to confess that I doubted him at first because he is a child but now I would like you to keep him closer."

Kian: "I am planning to. The best part is that he doesn't have friends at all I am his only friend and he does not like cliques and groups."

Sam: "You both need that. As for him if he fails they will remove him from the team so he knows what is at stake."

Kian: "He doesn't even need to study. Do you know he has never gotten any mark except for a distinction since we started?"

Sam: "He is super intelligent and what I like about him is that he doesn't brag about it."

Kian: "He took it from his parents. They are down to earth only one of his sisters took from the mother's mother because she is a snob to the fullest. When they visited last month she didn't even want to hold my hand."

Sam: "Let her be. We are your family we love you; ghost and his parents also appreciate your presence in their lives. At least she is miles away."

Kian: "Yes you are right. Either way I am grateful I met him because I am doing way better than I anticipated at school. I can even study alone when he is not around without hustles like the last time I was in high school."

Sam: "So glad it is working out well. So how are things besides school?"

Kian: "All is well I was only surprised when Thabo called me and told me that he wants to come and see my humble aboard when he comes to Johannesburg on business."

He laughed

Sam: "My brother will never change I tell you."

Kian: "At least he is always reaching out to family although his way of life is unorthodox to us he still reaches out. Junior said he was with him in Mpumalanga last week."

Sam: "Yes you are right all we need is to let him be because changing him will make him determined never to change again."

Kian: "Yes as long as he is doing his things far."

Sam: "Dad is the one who gets worked up a lot. On the other hand I do not blame him because you know the family back home. They think dad just let us do as we please. They even said because we grew up as whites from your dad's influence."

We laughed

Kian: "I was talking to Nono about that too. She told me they still think that her career path is a disgrace."

Sam: "I have learnt to ignore their comments."

He laughed.

Kian: "Ahso... I met someone."

Sam: "You what?"

I told him everything because with that tone he was going to make me say it one way or the other.

Kian: "I do not know what to do and I never planned it bro."

Sam: "I understand but do you think you will manage both school and her?"

Kian: "I don't know but I am willing to try. I will take things slowly that much I know but right now I only want to make her my queen."

Sam: "Go get her tiger."

I gasped I was even surprised he was not freaking out.

Kian: "What?"

Sam: "Kian, you are a man now and I know you can never take a challenge that will destroy your future. I have lived with you for all my life and I know you better than anyone else. If you feel like that, go for her as long as you promise me you will never slacken because if you do then you know Khumalo with his shambok will be there before the sun rises." We laughed then he continued "If you let go also it will distract you and I don't want that. So I give you my blessings as your big brother but you will have to send her picture for your big bro to approve."

See that's why I loved Sambulo more than all my brothers.

Kian: "You will be surprised. Now my task is to win her which seems to be an uphill task."

Sam: "Kian

Advertisement

afraid of a challenge I never thought I will live to see that day."

We laughed.

Kian: "If you see her you will understand bro."

Sam: "That I will have to see. Hence the more reason to go and change your wardrobe."

Kian: "I am thinking against it."

Sam: "What?"

Kian: "Hear me out please before you explode."

He laughed hard.

Sam: "Okay and I am still your big brother douche."

Kian: "I am thinking I do not have to change for her. If she likes me she better do it like this. I am not trying to impress her with a fake Kian. I want her to know the real me and I will change my clothes when I have failed or when she has become mine. I love her the way she is and I wouldn't want her to change to impress me."

Sam: "Wow, love."

Kian: "I think so."

We laughed. I was not sure but my heart was telling me that I loved her.

Sam: "I like your thinking and you are right."

Kian: "For real?"

Sam: "Yes silly. You know I will never play about something that serious."

He was right we spoke about other things then he dropped. When we finished the call I went back to my search. I might have fallen asleep while searching because I woke up when Ghost was in the flat. He had his own set of keys and a parking spot. I was not going to buy a car soon so I was good with him using my spot.

Ghost: "Why are you researching Hollywood stars?"

Kian: "Hay you are back. How was the game?"

Ghost: "Tiring I wish I didn't have this assignment."

Kian: "Do not worry I finished the research for us so we need to type them only."

Ghost: "Really? You are a life saver do you know that."

Kian: "Yah; yah; yah. So you may go home and relax. Did you win?"

Ghost: "Nope we were beaten and I was frustrated my dad even wanted to fight with the coach because of his favouritism."

Kian: "You were at the bench?"

Ghost: "Hell nah but our best flanker was at the bench while two lousy twin players messed up because their dad bought the kit for us."

Kian: "What?"

Ghost: "Yes the moron even bragged that his boys are not going anywhere."

Kian: "Do those things really happen?"

Ghost: "With money involved nothing is impossible."

Kian: "That's bad."

Ghost: "Let me eat and drive home."

Kian: "Lucky you I cooked."

Ghost: "That is your duty as a bigger brother to make sure I don't starve." I just laughed as we got to the kitchen. "You haven't told me why you were googling about Hollywood starts?"

I forgot he was a persistent person.

Kian: "Please promise you won't laugh."

Ghost: "That will never happen. You know me if I want to laugh I do so how will I control myself. I do not want to promise and do the opposite." I just laughed as he smiled all the way. I ended up telling him my reason to google and he laughed as I predicted.

Kian: "What is funny?"

Ghost: "The way you are thinking farm boy. You think like someone who grew up in the farm."

Kay: "Hello I grew up there."

Ghost: "Exactly."

Kian: "I am lost."

Ghost: "Be found."

He finished eating and left for a bath. I was left amazed because I was not sure I followed, he was speaking in riddles. I waited for him to finish bathing.

Kian: "Weren't you supposed to bath first before eating?"

Ghost: "I wanted to eat some more so I knew the water would make me hungry."

I laughed.

Kian: "You and your theories."

Ghost: "So have you thought about what I said?"

Kian: "You didn't say anything to me. You left me confused."

Ghost: "You are really thick. Come let's do this." He took my laptop and logged onto facebook then he went to the varsity facebook page. God I was really thick. Why didn't I think of it first? "I know I am a genius and you are the dummy."

We laughed because I was used to him reading my mind all the time. He was not psychic but he really studied people closely that's why he managed that.

Kian: "That's what I pay you for."

We both laughed

Ghost: "I have met her once or twice I know, even some players from the team wanted to get her but she is a hard nut to crack. I hear that she has never dated ever and you will be lucky if you get her."

Kian: "Why does she not date?"

Ghost: "I am not a prophet dude."

We laughed

Kian: "I never said that. I thought maybe you heard something."

Ghost: "Not at all. I have a few guesses; either she was hurt before she came here or she is very religious or her childhood was a mess. I am just guessing because those are the possibilities."

Kian: "I guess I will have to find out. The way she is beautiful I just wish to get her and enclose her in the castle then live happy ever after."

Ghost: "You are sick. What I can do is just watch as you crush like others. If you get her I will train with you hard so that you make it for the next season trials."

I smiled from ear to ear.

Kian: "It's a deal."

Ghost: "Walla!"

I looked at the computer and there she was as beautiful as ever. She was in the varsity page. She was doing her fifth year in medicine. She looked young for that. Which meant her and ghost were cut from the same cloth. I smiled at the thought.

Kian: "Any names."

Ghost: "Hello, hello Miss B."

Kian: "Where is her name?"

Ghost: "I just sent her a friend request."

Kian: "Wait a minute."

Ghost: "I am the one who sent the request not you. I have my reasons unlike you they are not romantically motivated reasons."

I laughed. I looked closer and I saw her account. Her name was Busisiwe Carol Radebe-Smith. So many names what the.....

7

At least I had a name to the face but I was going to wait till I was done with my exams. I knew what I came for at varsity; I was going to keep it that way.

In the meantime I was stalking her on facebook. She was a really bubble person I wondered why she chose to be single. From her information she was 22 and she was a little young maybe she wanted to date after she was done with her studies.

“With my family”

I checked the picture underneath; in the picture she was sitting on a man’s lap probably her dad. There was a white boy in a wheelchair and another white girl next to a beautiful woman who was carrying a boy who looked like the man B was sitting on top of.

“Beautiful family”

I just said it aloud without realising. Maybe they were like us, in the farm we had portraits in each house of all the kids and I tell you it was beautiful.

“Stop stalking the poor girl.”

I didn’t see Ghost coming I think he was being true to his name.

Kian: “Leave me alone.”

Ghost: "Why don't you just go to her at once?"

Kian: "I was busy with exams as you also know."

Ghost: "Speaking of which, how was the exam?"

Kian: "It was good and I told you that national marketing was going to come."

Ghost: "Yah, yah and you are becoming better than me. I think you gave me your disease of being dump."

We laughed he came and sat next to me. We were in the auditorium we usually studied there or waited for each other there when it was not occupied and we were done with mass lecture exams so it was hardly used.

Kian: "How was the exam to you?"

Ghost: "I really enjoyed it more than the other paper we wrote yesterday."

Kian: "Me too; yesterday's paper was too vague."

Ghost: "You can say that again but you will see what will happen?"

Kian: "What?"

Ghost: "The paper that we enjoyed the most is the paper that we will fail."

Kian: "Exactly; how is that possible?"

Ghost: "You ask me. I think they will be jealous that we all passed then they will be angry tear the papers apart like mad people then just give us lower marks for the heck of it."

I laughed hard. Even if I spent time with him he never failed to tickle me. No matter how much time people spent with him he never failed to surprise.

Kian: "Have you seen then do that?"

Ghost: "Just a theory. Have you never asked yourself why they never gave us our final exams scripts back?"

Kian: "I never wondered because I never have an idle mind like yours."

Ghost: "You will be surprised what that idle mind can do. I wanted to ask for my scripts just in case I got more than 100% you know."

I couldn't even breathe from laughter.

Kian: "How is it even possible to get more than 100%?"

Ghost: "It is when you get everything correct and you even correct the mistakes they made in their questions and formulas you see."

I finally concluded that he was insane.

Kian: "What?"

Ghost: "Like my business paper last year had so many errors I corrected them and I think they gave me a distinction to cover their mistake."

I laughed hard and let him be because there was no way I was going to win.

Kian: "So what will you be up to this holiday?"

Ghost: "We are travelling home because my cousin is coming out."

Kian: "Coming out of where?"

He laughed

Ghost: "You are really from the stone age."

Kian: "What; I am definitely from the farm."

Ghost: "When a girl reaches 18 they do a ball for her so that any suitor will be available and the one who is interested will have his interest known."

Kian: "Some tradition."

Ghost: "You tell me about it and I don't have time for that I am going there because dad said he will buy one of the video games I have been craving for."

Kian: "What?"

Ghost: "Am I speaking Chinese or French?"

Kian: "What will you do with a video game?"

Ghost: "Hellooooo. Do I need "Child onboard" sign on my forehead?"

I laughed because of the way he said it.

Kian: "Sometimes I forget that you are a kid. The way you change personalities; the next moment you are talking like a grown up and the next you are a kid."

Ghost: "Story of my life. Are you done stalking Miss B we need to go?"

Kian: "So she is Miss B to you."

Ghost: "Ja, we even chat nowadays and she will be coming to the theatre in an hour's time to pick up her brother."

Kian: "Say what?"

Ghost: "Hay I am not saying more."

Kian: "I am going to sit next to the theatre right now."

Ghost: "I am coming with you and we will be total spies."

Kian: "I am not a spy."

Ghost: "If you say so."

Kian: "Let's go

Advertisement

why does she go there and isn't her brother young for the university?"

Ghost: "Not saying more. You know I did my research and you have to do yours if you are really serious about her because I might go for her. She is softening up to me."

Kian: "What?"

He laughed hard, I was pissed.

Ghost: "You should have seen your face. You really love this girl don't you?"

Kian: "Please I am too young to die and I believe you are too so quit playing like that."

Ghost: "You are too uptight and you know my future wife is in Italy so when I am done with my career and school I am going for her."

Ever since he saw a picture of Nono and I he had been adamant that she was his future wife.

Kian: "You are five years younger than her."

Ghost: "Age is just a number and I will be mature when I ask her out."

I laughed

Kian: "She will be taken."

Ghost: "Then I will force the husband to divorce her and marry her."

I laughed at him and let him be because if I took him serious I was going to be insane. I know he was just being a kid.

Kian: "We are wasting time."

Ghost: "You are the one delaying farm boy."

I laughed as I finished packing up my things. When we got closer to the theatre she was coming out wheeling the white boy I saw in the portrait. So he was the brother?

Kian: "Is he the brother?"

Ghost: "Not saying more."

Kian: "You suck."

He only laughed typing on his phone then B stopped took out her phone smiled and replied. I looked at this traitor.

Ghost: "What?"

Kian: "You have her number? What did you say to her?"

Ghost: "It was a conversation between the two of us. You know what they say conversation is for two the third one is a crowd."

I ended up laughing.

Kian: "Where did you hear that?"

Ghost: "From a cook book I think."

I couldn't even contain myself. I was going to be mad like him before the year even ended.

Kian: "Let's just go home before you make me a lunatic. I need that number today."

Ghost: "Not happening you have to show that you are serious. Look at me I don't want her romantically but I already got what I wanted and we are friends."

Kian: "Traitor."

Ghost: "I call it determination."

Kian: "Whatever."

When we got home he was packing some of his stuff because we were left with a few papers then he was going to travel and I was going home. I was even excited to go home. Pa called me when I was about to cook our dinner.

Kian: "Do you miss me that much? I will be home next week do not stress."

He laughed and I smiled. I missed that laugh so much

Pa: "That's the reason I called."

He sounded serious and I was worried.

Kian: "Pa is everything okay?"

Pa: "Yes. Junior called me and asked for permission to have you for this holiday."

Kian: "Oh"

That was the only thing I managed to say. I didn't know how to feel because I missed home on the other hand I needed to live a little.

Pa: "Are you still there?"

Kian: "Yes pa I am still here. What did you tell him?"

Pa: "I do not have a problem with that because you have been in one place for long so you need to see our beautiful country."

Kian: "If you say so pa but I was missing home."

Pa: "Missing what exactly? The old people."

I laughed at him.

Kian: "I would love to go there if you don't mind."

Pa: "That will make us happy as long as you mail the first semester results."

Kian: "I will definitely do that pa."

Pa: "How were the exams?"

Kian: "Challenging but Thuto helped me a lot I am hoping for better results."

Pa: "I am glad to hear that. Please stick to that boy you might even graduate top of your class."

Kian: "I am planning on that and it makes school easier than before."

Pa: "That's wonderful"

We spoke about different things then he ended the call.

Kian: "So I am going to Mpumalanga for the holidays."

I said to Ghost going to the bedroom where he was packing.

Ghost: "Wonderful you will have to live a little. I was tired of having farm conversations maybe now I will have Mpumalanga convos."

Kian: "Leave me alone."

We laughed and I helped him pack. His things were so many as if he was the owner of the flat.

Kian: "Let me ask, who is the owner of the place in the first place?"

Ghost: "Blame it to my mom."

We laughed.

Kian: "Always have an answer for everything."

Ghost: “Why wouldn’t I? You ask a question I have to answer whether I like it or not. Older people always tell me that it’s rude if you don’t answer asked questions.”

I raised my hands in surrender. I was giving up on the Ghost. I just laughed and let him be.

Sambulo called to tell me that he deposited money for me to travel.

Sam: “Book a plane please”

Kian: “Why a plane I want to see places?”

Sam: “I know why I am saying that.”

Kian: “Okay”

I didn’t even want to argue I was happy that I was travelling. I packed a few things because Junior told me it was hot so I had heavy and warm clothes. My time in Mpumalanga was great but I was still stalking my queen. She was having a good time with her family. They had travelled to Cairo; she was posting pictures every hour. I couldn’t help it but fall in love with her family. Junior also advised me to be myself. He had a beautiful girlfriend who was so humble and I knew baba Khumalo was going to love her. The reason he wanted me there was because he had proposed so he wanted to know if his dad or let me rephrase his dads would approve and I gave him a thumbs up. He was over the moon.

When I got back to school I had gathered courage to talk to my queen because I knew assignments were going to come a few weeks later. I sent a friend request and she accepted. Wow that was easy. I sent a message with my number for her to call me she saw it but ignored it. I waited for her at the theatre every time she went there but I couldn't approach her.

Ghost: "Giving up already?"

That was ghost laughing at me when I was telling him about the number of messages I have sent asking for her number.

Kian: "No, never."

Ghost: "Good."

The following week I gathered enough courage and stopped her.

Kian: "Hello my name is Kian Coetzee. May I please have a word with you?"

She smiled and that smile sent me places

Busi: "So you are my stalker, I hear you have been meaning to talk to me and I hope what your friend told me is not true."

Kian: "I....."

8

I couldn't even say two stupid words. She was more than beautiful in person and in close proximity. It was like I had died and gone to heaven.

A number of things were running in my mind then but the top on my list was the Ghost. How could he betray me like that; that was my question? The boy in the chair had a smirk in his face I looked at him again and he smiled.

Boy: "You look handsome in person your pic on facebook is all hazy."

I was flushed and embarrassed I had only one picture there.

Kian: "I....."

Busi: "Bran, stop it."

I couldn't even talk. I was so embarrassed. It wasn't difficult like that with Fiona, or was it because we grew up together so it became easy for us to gradually grow into each other.

Boy: "Do not be scared of her; her bark is more dangerous than her bite."

I wanted the earth to open and swallow me at that moment.

Busi: "Brandon will you shut up."

So his name was Brandon.

Bran: "You said a mean word Busi and God will punish you."

Busi: "I didn't mean to and I will tell Uncle Kay that you were in my business."

Bran: "Daddy will have to hear the whole story."

Busi: "You wouldn't. If you tell daddy I will let the driver to bring you here."

Who was Uncle Kay and why was she scared of him and her father. I looked lost and I was sweating so I had to leave before I embarrassed myself further.

Kian: "I have....." I couldn't even say more than two words. What was happening to me? ".....go...."

I didn't wait for them to respond I just turned and went to the bus stop. She shouted my name and I didn't even want to look back. My heart was pounding fast I even fought tears.

Why was this happening to me? I really loved her and just wanted to gather courage. I needed to get home and call that traitor Ghost.

Lucky was on my side when I got to the bus stop the late bus just stopped I got in and replayed the events of the few minutes ago.

Why was I scared of her that much? She really intimidated me. When I got home I didn't even wait to do anything I called him

and it sent me straight to voicemail. I was frustrated I let it go because I had dinner to cook.

I was really doing well with my studies I never failed even one assignment the first semester my family was happy because of my marks. My phone rang and I answered without looking.

Kian: "You have to be tired of living Ghost because I am ready to murder you."

Voice: "Wowowowo what have I done now and since when have I changed to be ghost. What did he do now?"

I laughed because it was Nono.

Kian: "You don't know how much I want to strangle him."

Nono: "Leave my future husband alone."

I laughed even Nono knew that Ghost had a huge crush on her.

Kian: "I will murder him and you will be a widow before you even get married."

Nono: "What did he do now?"

I told her what Busi said and she just laughed.

Kian: "Why would you laugh?"

Nono: "Ghost is not a kind of person to do that. He might be talkative but he will never do that."

Kian: "Why are you defending him?"

Nono: "Ghost has been friend with B for long isn't it?"

Kian: "It is"

Nono: "Has he told you about B and her life?"

Kian: "No but what has that got to do with the matter at hand?"

Nono: "Everything."

Kian: "I don't follow."

Nono: "Because you are thick and I will spell it out to you. Ghost talks to B about everything he knows personal stuffs about her but he waited for you to find out about her yourself. So don't you think he would do the same to her?"

I was thinking deep and I was getting confused.

Kian: "I don't know."

Nono: "Just give the kid a break do not confront him and wrongfully accuse him because you will lose the only good friend you ever had."

She was right I had to be rational about it. I knew he was not going to tell me what he said to her but I was willing to compromise. I had to work on my courage to talk to Busi again.

Kian: "You are right it helps talking look at me now I am calm.
Thank you very much Nono. Why did you call?"

She laughed hard.

Nono: "Look at you all touchy."

We both laughed

Kian: "Sorry I was wondering because you don't call during the week."

Nono: "Can't I just call if I miss my family."

Kian: "Okay Nono I miss you too."

She laughed

Advertisement

she was aware that I was avoiding an argument with her.

Nono: "I might have good news for myself and I do not know how the parents will take it."

Kian: "What?"

Nono: "I was give a five year contract to sign and I talked to the other brothers so far but I do not know how the parents might take it."

Kian: "Wow Nono that is the best news ever."

Nono: "You took it so well like the other brothers but now the hardest part will be to talk to the parents."

Kian: "As for me if you need help with the dads to be convinced I am game but the mothers you are on your own love."

She released a deep sigh I knew the position she was in was tight.

Nono: "But they are offering me a holiday once a year which I also have even when I am in Africa."

Kian: "That is better and do not let that opportunity pass you by no matter what."

Nono: "Never I will have to sit down with the parents and reason with them."

Kian: "That's my girl."

She giggled. We spoke about different things, I even forgot my humiliation. She was right I had to stop blaming the Ghost and man up. I did my assignment and when I was done I received a call from Ghost's mother telling me that they forgot to renew his phone contract so he didn't have a phone but he was going to have it by weekend. He was also not going to attend for the week because he had back to back matches.

“Saved by the bell” I laughed at myself. Before sleeping I logged onto facebook and inboxed her. I was done running away if she wanted me fine but if she didn’t so be it. She was online.

Kian: “Hi”

Busi: “Kian.”

Okay that was quick. Then I was lost again. What was really wrong with me? Breathe. I took small breathing exercises and I typed.

Kian: “I am a person of few words. I am so sorry for the way I bolted it’s just that I am just coming from a small community and I am used to talking to animals more than people.”

Busi: “Hahahahahaha.”

She even sent a laughing emojis. I laughed too, involuntarily. That was going fine I was better that facial encounters.

Kian: “Listen I am not an outgoing person I know you might think I am being forward but I really like you and I am not like others.”

I know it sounded cliché but I was willing to grovel.

Busi: “Okay.”

Okay that was a little cold. I was getting discouraged by the minute. While I was still typing my other sentence I saw that

she just went offline then my heart sank and I logged off slamming the laptop in the process. I prepared for bed and slept with a heavy heart. When I woke up in the morning I switched on my phone to send a message to my family because that was our morning routine. Messages came flooding on whatsapp it was her. Or I forgot I had sent my number a long time ago.

Busi: "Hi. It's me."

Busi: "I am so sorry I logged off because we were going for the prayer and when I came back you were offline."

Busi: "Hi. It's me again. This is my number I would love for you to hear me out."

Busi: "Sorry if I made you uncomfortable I didn't mean to. I am not an "Ice queen" as people perceive. I heard them talk behind my back but I don't mind at all."

I smiled at that message.

Busi: "You know what if you are ignoring me on purpose its fine I won't bother you again. "

So she thought I was ignoring her. I logged onto facebook there were a lot of messages too where she was apologising too. I smiled. I was getting there. I wanted to call Ghost then I remembered his phone problem I smiled and prepared for the

day. I wore what I thought was the best pair of shorts and top. It was hot.

My day was a little boring because I really missed my friend Ghost. I had replied her messages and told her that I slept early because of assignments; which was a lie and she had sent a message saying “thank you for getting back to me” and I just smiled.

When I was about to go out of campus after my lectures I met my worst nightmare.

Voice: “So you can take the farm boy from the farm but you can never take the farm away from the farm boy?”

They clapped and when I turned it was Fiona and three other girls. They looked so beautiful but the fake beautiful not the Busi’s beauty.

Girl1: “So this is the farm boy?”

Fiona: “Please do not do this now.”

Girl2: “You tell me this was your first who looks like he is coming from the hole.”

Girl3: “At least he has a body to die for but zero style.”

They laughed I felt naked because they even had attitude. I looked at Fiona and she looked beautiful the same Fiona I fell in love with.

Kian: "Hello Fiona."

She smiled and I fell madly in love again.

Fiona: "Hi."

Girl1: "You are even smiling. Fiona you are entertaining him and my brother is coming to collect you just this minute."

She flinched and I saw her face change.

Fiona: "Who said I will go back to him?"

Kian: "May we speak in private."

Fiona: "Kian there is nothing I want to say to you in private. I have Mike and he is jealous so do yourself a favour and leave me alone."

Kian: "What happened to the Fiona who was innocent who I fell in love with?"

Fiona: "That Fiona died."

Kian: "Fiona."

I sounded just like the guy from Eurotrip movie and the girl who dumped him was also Fiona the difference was the fact that I didn't have an annoying brother to film the events. I was beyond hurt I wanted to really understand why she really left me.

The girls were laughing at me and there was an audience I was even embarrassed. I saw Siya I thought he was going to join in the laughter but he seemed hurt he shook his head and left I was relived. As I was about to leave Busi came towards me. They looked at her (Fiona and her Chipmunks) they looked intimidated.

Busi: "Baby I have been looking all over for you."

She kissed my cheeks and I didn't even want to make it look like an act. She was good at that and her smile. I was caught in between because both women were beautiful but then I just needed to get out of the embarrassment.

Kian: "I am so sorry I was side tracked."

I smiled at her and she winked.

Busi: "May we go now I missed you deeply."

She gave me puppy ears and kissed my lips. I almost fainted but it was time to take back my life because I had been humiliated enough.

Kian: "I am sorry my love. Ah.... this is Fiona my childhood friend. Fiona this is"

Fiona: "I know who she is. Everyone knows."

She was down and the girls with Fiona had their mouths hanging.

Busi: “Nice to meet you. We would have loved to stay and chat but we can’t because I missed him. We are just new in this and I am still excited about the farm stories he has been feeding me.”

She was smiling I smiled back.

Fiona: “Ah.....”

For the first time I saw her speechless.

Girl1: “So you will go for this.....”

Busi: “As I said before ladies. I do not have time my mom is waiting for us because we will be using the farm to shoot our movie. Hopefully I will see your home too Fiona.”

She was flashed. She had turned red.

Kian: “Sorry ladies I have to go. I am sorry Fiona this is what I wanted to tell you in private I didn’t want you to find out this way. You deserved to hear from me. Let me not hold you Mike will hold me accountable.”

I smiled even if I knew it was a shred I was happy that we talked the previous night. They looked at us. I took her hand and asked.

Kian: “Where is Bran today?”

She smiled and then replied with a smile.

Busi: "He didn't have music classes today."

We left with people looking at us. I was never going to let anything pass my lips after that kiss. As if she read my mind.

Busi: "I never thought my first kiss would be in public."

Kian: "What....."

So I was her first kiss. I was hoping I was going to be her first in everything; I just involuntarily smiled as she opened her car.

Busi: “Why are you smiling alone? I hope you have money to pay me for that act because it will cost you. Professionals charged per hour I will be lenient because I like you.”

Okay there is the ice queen. At least she was smiling unlike the serious Busi and she said she liked me. I never wanted the serious one I wanted the playful one.

Kian: “So how much do I owe you ma’am?” She laughed as she was instructing me to get inside the car. “I was going to wait for the bus.”

Busi: “Never going to be happening from now on because people are still looking at us and I know soon not even soon I think we are already on social media because they have been meaning to publish the story about the person who will break the ice from the ice queen’s heart.”

I was surprised at even how calm she was.

Kian: “What?”

Busi: “The fact that I do not have friends does not mean I do not know what they say about me behind my back.”

Kian: "What? What about the girls I saw you with the other day."

Busi: "Oh those are my classmates and the other one is sucking up to me because she likes Brandon."

Kian: "What? Isn't he young and she is old for him."

Busi: "Age is just a number. It's only that Brandon is focusing on music because he wants to take it to the professional level."

We were talking. I even pinched myself and slightly slapped my cheeks when she was not looking.

Kian: "Isn't he young for varsity?"

Busi: "He is still at school. This is a family varsity so Uncle Kay has connections."

Kian: "I am lost."

Busi: "From my great-grandfather they only trusted this varsity so that's why I say family varsity. It's a family tradition to come here. No one even asks."

Kian: "Oh, so you are close with your Uncle. Is he from the mother's side or father's side?"

Busi: "which Uncle?"

Kian: "This is the second time I hear you talking about your uncle Kay."

She smiled from ear to ear.

Busi: "He is my dad."

Kian: "Oh. So why do you call him Uncle Kay?"

Busi: "Long story for another day."

I didn't want to pry but I knew she was going to tell me with time.

Kian: "Sorry with the million questions but I really wanted to know you better hence I was bombarding your inbox with messages."

Busi: "I get it Kian. I saved you and I will save you any time any day but there will never be anything between us."

Kian: "Why if I may ask?"

Busi: "Story of another day. Please direct me."

I directed her. I had mixed feelings I didn't know what to do. I was never going to let her go.

Kian: "At least let's be friends then."

It came out as a whisper I was not sure about it but I really needed her by my side.

Busi: "Kian, you are a good guy any other girl would be lucky to have you but not me."

My heart was beating fast and I was not going to accept defeat. How was I going to leave with myself when I knew I could have tried but I failed?

Kian: “B I know we don’t know each other but for now is there any harm in being friends because people already think we are an item? Believe me they will pry so I am suggesting we get to know each other as friends then and when I find someone I will let them know that you are my bestie and if you find someone too they will know I am your bestie.”

She looked hurt about the “someone” part and I wanted to get a reaction from her. Once I did I established that she was hurt I knew she had feeling so I was not going to rush her but I was also not going to keep my distance not from that day.

Busi: “I must warn you I do not do well with besties.”

We laughed.

Kian: “Why if I may ask?”

Busi: “I grew up like that Brandon, Belinda and Bukhosi are my only best friends. I am their big sister and friend.”

I was surprised because Brandon was white and Belinda too because I saw the portrait from facebook. I think she saw my confusion.

Busi: "We are adopted except for Bukho who is Uncle Kay's son but not my mom's son."

Kian: "Huh?"

I was more confused.

Busi: "Do not worry bestie you will find out soon but you will love my family because it's very big I think four times yours."

Kian: "What?"

Busi: "Family is not only blood but people who care about each other and have a common goal to see each other happy. My grandparents were also white. I mean my mom was also adopted."

Kian: "Wow what a family."

Busi: "Am I still in the right direction."

Kian: "Shiz niz you are the one who was distracting me."

We both laughed.

Busi: "You said a mean word."

I laughed remembering what Brandon said the day I met them.

Kian: "I didn't and please don't tell Uncle Kay."

We both laughed. I directed her she made a U-turn.

Busi: "If Uncle Kay knew that I am entertaining boys he would kill me."

Kian: "I am not a boy I am a man."

Busi: "Okay my man."

I smiled from ear to ear.

Kian: "I would love to hear you call me that in real life."

She laughed hard

Busi: "Is it not real life here?"

Kian: "Nope we are acting and you should tell your mom to hire us."

She laughed

Busi: "You are crazy. You and your childish friend."

Kian: "Who? Ghost?"

Busi: "Who is ghost?"

Kian: "Oh

Advertisement

Thuto I call him ghost."

Busi: "Why?" I told her the whole story and she laughed her lungs out. "I will use it from today onwards."

Kian: "He loves it. He does not care at all."

Busi: "Does he even care about anything."

Kian: "Thank you for the lift. Drive safely."

Busi: "Okay bestie I will be picking you up in the morning at 07h00 be ready I have an early lecture." My mouth was hanging. "What? You are my boyfriend remember so we need to look the part when we are acting or else my mom won't hire us permanently."

I laughed hard and she joined in.

Kian: "Yes ma'am."

Busi: "When Ghost is back you tell me because I always see you driving together."

So she did notice. That was music to my ears. I was more than happy. She knew about me too. It was more than refreshing.

Kian: "I will be waiting."

She smiled I did the same and I watched her as she drove off. When I got in the flat I punched the air. "Yes, yes, yes." I kept screaming and I didn't know who to call. When I was still celebrating there was a knock at the door. I was surprised because we didn't usually have visitors. Ghost had his own key.

When I got there it was my male neighbour he was smiling from ear to ear.

Him: "So it is true that you melted the ice heart." Was it a statement or question? I was just lost but I just smiled. "Dude for a simple and quite guy you quickly made history. Your video went viral within seconds."

Kian: "What?"

He showed me his phone and I was dumbstruck.

Him: "See what I mean. Look your video already has more than a million likes people shared it and re-sent it."

I didn't know how to react while I was in a confused state my phone rang.

Kian: "Excuse me."

Him: "Go ahead celebrity I will see you around."

With that said he left I answered it was an unsaved number.

Voice: "So I only leave you a day and you are a wild kid? I think I will have to be strict on you. Dad is going to spank you really."

I laughed hard it was the Ghost.

Kian: "Do not even say that it's like I am in a movie right now."

Ghost: "I am coming there and you will tell me what happened to the farm boy I left there."

Kian: "Do not even think about it. Please come back home I need you."

I was even dramatic like him.

Ghost: "I taught you well."

Kian: "Leave me alone. On a serious note dude I need your advice as in yesterday. I am confused and I don't think I will eat today because the butterflies I have are about to come out from my mouth."

He laughed hard I really missed him. He had become my pillar of strength at his age.

Ghost: "Who would have thought I would be the next Dr Phil at my age? I think I am in the wrong profession I will have to change when I come back and become a doctor."

I laughed hard. See what I was missing.

Kian: "Okay Dr Phil when are you coming back?"

Ghost: "Just after weekend. What you can do now is look for my consultation fee so that I will get paid. On the other hand I can give you my banking details you know. My first patient/client you will get a discount don't worry."

There was never a dull moment with Ghost. I ended up laughing hard.

Kian: "I will do that Dr Phil."

Ghost: "So tell me the original version of events not the social media edited version."

I laughed then told him the whole story.

Kian: "So what did you tell her?"

Ghost: "Nothing about you she might have put two and two together. You are not that important in our conversations because I will be trying to soften her so that I will get to her mom."

Kian: "What?"

Ghost: "Not in that way. You are really naughty, I want to take my career to the next level and she has connections I didn't want my parents to be spoon feeding me. They have a lot in their plate; not forgetting the bonding they have that distract their thinking."

Kian: "I really miss your craziness. So you really want to take your career far."

Ghost: "Yes and you will be my manager and Mrs Ice queen Coetzee will be my personal trainer and we will train in my indoor gym."

Kian: "if you have a death wish."

He laughed I was never going to get used to his jokes when it came to my woman. My woman; it just sounded right yet weird.

We finished with the Ghost and I tried eating but I couldn't then I went online so that I could see whether she was okay with the trending photo.

Kian: "Hay bestie how are you feeling?"

Busi: "....."

After sometime she sent the laughing emojis.

Kian: "How is your family taking this?"

Busi: "Taking what?"

Kian: "What is online because I don't even know what my family will say?"

Busi: "I was in the spotlight since I was six. What I love about my family is that they never believe what the media says because they are the media."

I laughed alone.

Kian: "Your dad/Uncle Kay is okay with the kiss."

Busi: "I don't even want to talk about it they are mocking me but I do not regret saving you. You are a good guy and I would have hated myself if they had destroyed yourself esteem."

Kian: "Sweet."

Busi: "There is one thing I want from you though."

I was getting excited.

Kian: "Name it my love."

I typed it absent minded but it felt good.

Busi: "Can I take you shopping? We are not changing your style we will only buy the trending fashion from your style."

I smiled I was thinking the same but if she was the one who was going to take me I was game. She was even willing to let me keep my style. She liked me as I was, that was really a bonus.

Kian: "Thank you my bestie. You are truly the best."

When we were still chatting there was a knock again I was irritated this boy next door was going to be trouble. My phone was in my hand when I opened the door my jaws just dropped.....

10

“What do you want here?”

It was one of Fiona’s Chipmunks, the one who was talking too much. The one who said Mike his brother was coming.

Her: “Hie.”

Kian: “I asked you a question.”

Her: “Do not be so uptight can I come in?”

I was getting angry.

Kian: “Look here I do not have time to waste; I have been on the phone with my woman you are disturbing me.”

Her: “I do not care about your women I just want to talk to you.”

Kian: “I said woman not women because I am a one man woman. Ah what’s your name again? Never mind I don’t want to know your name chipmunk.”

She opened her eyes wide and was about to say something when my phone rang. It was Busi as if she knew I needed saving.

Kian: “Baby; I am sorry there was an uninvited guest at my door step.”

She sensed that I was in distress and I think she suspected who it was.

Busi: "I was wondering why you left me hanging."

My phone was on loud speaker intentionally

Kian: "I wouldn't do that not in a million years. My heart beats only for you my love."

Busi: "That's what I would love to hear. Want to come and massage me I just came from the bath."

Kian: "I am getting all excited here you know how smooth your skin is and how I can't stop when I have started."

Busi: "Mmmmmm I am getting excited even in places I do not want to name."

We both giggled. To be honest I was also getting excited in some places. I looked at the chipmunk and she had a sour face.

Kian: "Love my visitor is still here and I do not want to keep her waiting."

Busi: "I am not dropping the call I want to hear what she wants."

Kian: "You are on loud speaker and you know that we don't have secrets."

Busi: “Okay ask her because I am excited here I do not want to be left hanging. This is my time.”

Kian: “Okay baby.” When I looked at the chipmunk she was embarrassed. “You said you want what? How did you know where I lived?”

Her: “I am so sorry I have to go.”

Kian: “My love; are you there.”

Busi: “Yes I am still here who is that?”

Her: “I have to go sorry.”

She just ran down the stairs because I guess the lift was going to take long. I shrugged my shoulders in disbelief then I went back to my call.

Kian: “How did you know I needed saving?”

Busi: “I just felt it I don’t know why and how?”

Kian: “What?”

This was really weird my head was about to explode because it was really supernatural what was happening.

Busi: “I don’t know how to explain it in words I have never been like that before.”

This was not happening. Was there a possibility that she was my soul mate?

Kian: "Do you realise what is happening here?"

I was laughing because I could tell she was pouting.

Busi: "Do not even think about it."

Kian: "Okay my love."

Busi: "I will get you for that. We are not acting now."

Voice: "So you really do have a boyfriend look you are even blushing."

Busi: "Belinda

get out of my room."

Voice: "Busi has a boyfriend....."

She was busy singing Busi was angry.

Busi: "I will tell Uncle Kay. Daddyyyyy!!!!"

I just laughed, I wished I had siblings although I had but I wanted to know how it felt to have that bond. Anyway I was good with the ones I had. I think they had forgotten that I was in the phone.

Voice2: "Beli how many times should I tell you about privacy?"

Voice: "But daddy I was just....."

Busi: "I need my own place now."

Dad: "Why if I may ask?"

Beli: "See what I mean she is going because she has a boyfriend now it's even on social media."

Oh God what have I done?

Dad: "Go to your room I want to speak to your sister. NOW!!!"

Beli: "Sorry daddy."

Her voice was shaking.

Busi: "Oh snap I am still on a call."

I would have loved to hear what the father was going to say but hey I was going to ask her the following day.

Kian: "You really forgot about me."

Busi: "I am so sorry bestie that was my family for you. I will see you tomorrow."

She was very good at this acting because she spoke as if I was her female friend. You know what I am talking about.

Kian: "Okay I will app you before I sleep."

Busi: "Cool."

She dropped the call and I just smiled on my own. I was still uneasy about the visit from that girl. I didn't have Fiona's number anymore if I had I was going to tell her to keep her

hood rat on the leash. I called Sambulo to tell him about my day.

Sam: "Bro I see you are now famous."

We both laughed

Kian: "I am not and the reason I called is this chipmunk that just came here what do I do?"

He laughed.

Sam: "You and name calling."

I laughed too.

Kian: "I do not even want to know her name."

Sam: "What I can tell you is this girl is trouble. She might have been sent by Fiona or she is just doing it on her own because you told me that she was complimenting your body."

Kian: "Yes she did but her attitude stinks."

Sam: "Enough about the sluts tell me more about Mrs."

I laughed because there was excitement in his voice.

Kian: "There is nothing to tell she just said that we are friends."

Sam: "I have heard so many stories about friendships."

I laughed.

Kian: "I am just grateful for being her friend for now so I will work my magic afterwards."

Sam: "You go Mr Magic."

Kian: "Let me rest because I know what I came here for so if I sleep early I will be fresh in the morning."

Sam: "That's the spirit. I will call you during weekend I am swamped this week."

Kian: "Okay bro."

When I ended the call I made a light meal and ate I was really missing Ghost because he was going to be telling me what to do and how to deal with the other chipmunk. I smiled as I went for my bath when I got back I had a message from my queen saying goodnight. Yes she was my ice queen.

To her word she came in the morning when I got in the car I kissed her cheeks involuntarily.

Kian: "Bestie how is your morning?"

She blushed and I inwardly smiled knowing I was getting there.

Busi: "Morning; how are you?"

Kian: "I am super not looking forward to this day and not sure how I will manage without Ghost."

Busi: "He has that effect isn't it?"

We both laughed. Thuto was one of a kind and I was going to keep him till the end of time.

Kian: "So what was all that about?"

Busi: "Oh God I forgot you heard everything."

Kian: "Not everything because you cut the most important part."

We both laughed

Busi: "There was nothing there and Uncle Kay is not a bad guy we had a good father-daughter chat with my mom smiling from ear to ear by the door."

Kian: "What?"

Busi: "So you thought I was going to be in trouble. You don't know how their faces shined hopefully when they thought I was dating."

Kian: "What? Are you just saying that or you are serious?"

Busi: "I am as serious as a heart attack. They are worried that I might end up alone because I vowed never to fall in love or date."

Oh that's some messed up ish.

Kian: "Why if I may ask?"

Busi: "Something that happened in my childhood but not today. I am too happy to be depressed."

Ghost had guessed right. Her childhood messed her up. I was just happy that she was smiling and saying she was too.....wait a minute why was she happy?

Kian: "Why are you happy if I may ask?"

Busi: "Stop questioning a lady it's rude."

We both laughed and talked about school all the way. Can you imagine she was also like Ghost when it came to school? No wonder ghost wanted to be close to her. I was going to be lucky if she was going to be my woman because it was going to be easy for me to pass with flying colours as Ghost also pushed me hard.

Busi: "What time do your lectures end?"

Kian: "Do not tell me you want to pick me up again."

Busi: "I thought I made myself clear yesterday? We are not going to have a first fight as a couple are we with people looking through our window just now."

I looked and people were looking at us I just smiled and told her. How did we arrive so fast on campus?

Busi: "There, was it that difficult?"

Kian: "No ma'am."

We laughed going out of the car; the haters and lovers took some pictures. I was beyond caring on what people thought. She kissed my cheeks as we parted ways. When I got to class Siya came to me. I was not in the mood to fight with Siya.

Siya: "So farm boy you do have it in you?"

I was so surprised he was whispering and not angry at all. He even had a smile in his face I was surprised.

Kian: "What? Are you not angry?"

Siya: "No why would I be?" I looked at him blankly and he laughed. "No man. Do you think I am that petty? I might be mean and a bully but when it comes to that I am not petty I know when I have lost and I lost a long time ago before I even known that you existed."

Kian: "Are you serious?"

Siya: "I am not a woman who will keep repeating the same thing."

We laughed. Oh my God I actually laughed with Siya.

Kian: "I thought you were into her."

Siya: "You are right. "Was" which to me its past tense. I told you I do not want to fail again so I am not there anymore I just wanted to know how it feels for you."

He even had his naughty smile. I was not going to share because there was nothing to share.

Kian: "Nothing much."

Siya: "I get you." He stood up. I was wondering what he was getting. He turned before he walked away. "We are not friends so that you know."

He laughed and I laughed. I was not worried about him at all because he was barking without a bite. My classes were fine but I wanted to speak to Fiona about her friends because I didn't want trouble my life was okay without their drama.

When I was done with my lectures waiting for Busi my phone rang I answered without looking.

Voice: "Can we talk."

What the.....

11

I was just tired of these people. Only 24hrs seeing her and her friends and they were already on my back.

Kian: "What do you want from me?"

Fiona: "Just a minute only."

Kian: "Why don't you and your Chipmunks leave me alone?"

Fiona: "What are you talking about?"

Kian: "So you are going to pretend that you never sent your chipmunk to my house last night?"

Fiona: "Who are you talking about?"

Kian: "Or is it her brother your boyfriend Mike who sent her and you?"

Fiona: "What?"

I could hear her getting angry and worked out but it was not my problem.

Kian: "You told me that you are happy I am fine with that it hurt me at first I had to move on although I think I will never love anyone the way I loved you."

Oh snap wrong choice of words.

Fiona: "You still love me."

Kian: “No, no, no I love my woman she is not as icy as people presume. She doesn’t want to change me; she fell in love with my backward farm boy tendencies. I might not be smart like you said but she has never questioned my smartness because God knows why I was created like that. I do not want trouble that’s why I will stay away from you as you requested.”

Fiona: “That’s the problem I am sorry I didn’t mean to belittle you and I

I knew where that was going because I knew her very well.

Kian: “I forgave you a long time ago so please stop sending your chipmunks to me.”

Fiona: “I didn’t send her and why would she come to you because she is not your type?”

Kian: “So you are saying that I am too low for your friends?”

I never should have asked that question because it was the catalyst that almost destroyed my life and future.

Fiona: “Yes but that’s beside the point; the point is that I need to speak to you.”

Kian: “Not going to happen and please I do not want trouble with Mike stay away from me as a struggling student financially and academically I really need this so distractions will not do me good. Bye.”

I didn't wait for her to respond I just dropped the call. I didn't even have time to digest because Busi just stood in front of me. I was breathing fire.

Busi: "Hay, hay what is going on?"

Kian: "If it's not Fiona and the chipmunks."

She laughed and I ended up laughing too.

Busi: "I will never get used to your name calling. So what was my name before you met me? Not the ice queen name please."

I laughed.

Kian: "For me it was just my queen."

I looked her through the corner of my eye and she was curving her lips into a smile.

Busi: "So is it still my name?"

Kian: "You will have to stick around if you want to find out."

Busi: "Not fair which means I will be staying because of your blackmail?"

Kian: "Do not even try to guilty trip me I am not going back on my word."

Busi: "Fine but tell me what is your beef or story with this Fiona character?"

Kian: "Do you have time?"

Busi: "Yes today my mom will be shooting outside town so Uncle Kay will be picking her up around 10pm. Granny will be with us although she is too old she is always sleeping all the times."

I laughed

Kian: "Would you mind if we went to my place?"

Busi: "Not at all as long as we will order something to eat I don't feel like a home cooked meal."

Kian: "Why; do you eat badly cooked food?"

Busi: "No, never my mom is a good cook even Uncle Kay always brags about his wife."

We both laughed

Kian: "Okay I get you. Let me order while we drive home." She smiled. "Why are you smiling?"

Busi: "The way you said let's go home was as if we are a couple."

Kian: "That is a possibility if you let us be."

Busi: "No go area topic for today."

Kian: "Oh why not today?"

Busi: "We are talking about Fiona and the chipmunks today remember."

I laughed hard

Kian: "At least you said not today which means there will be a possibility in future I can live with that."

She blushed and I smiled to myself. She drove while we filled each other about the events of our day. We were like an old married couple from work going home. I loved it I even fantasised about our little one at the back from crèche.

"Get that crazy idea out of your mind."

I mentally reprimanded myself. We got home; I was glad I was not a messy person. I led her to the sitting room. Before we could settle down the food arrived. We ate on light conversations. Afterwards she helped me clean up. She was like me unlike Ghost who left the sink full; she wanted to leave the kitchen clean. We had so much in common it was not even funny. When we were done we went to sit again.

Busi: "Stop staring at me. I am still waiting."

I laughed she was right but I have calmed down and I was not in the mood because I wanted us to be cosy but hay I had to do it.

Kian: "Listen I am not telling you this because I want pity. I am telling you because I want you to know where I am coming from. I am deeply scarred."

Busi: "That makes the two of us."

Kian: "Fiona and I grew up together. My ma left my pa when I was in grade two for a drifter who had more money and style. I grew up with my extended family the Khumalos and Langas who were the helpers until they became part of the family. I have three brothers

Advertisement

one a Khumalo then two Langas and five sisters but I am closer to Nono more than other sisters because she is four years younger than me so I was like a bigger brother while growing up.

I never felt the void that much of my mom because Mrs Khumalo and Mrs Langa were always there. They played two different roles to us due of their different characters. They helped me overcome my fears that I had about women and relationships. They advised me to give Fiona a chance when I was done with my school but she was still doing grade 11. They saw that I was interested in her and they encourage me, they encouraged us. The whole family loved her even our chickens."

She laughed hard.

Busi: "You are not funny."

Kian: "I think Ghost gave me his disease because I now talk without thinking just like him."

Busi: "I can see hopefully I won't have the same disease."

We laughed

Kian: "I finally gave in. We loved each other and all was rosy. I fell in love with her every day. I became myself around her and because of her I learnt to forgive my ma for leaving us even pa was impressed. She then passed her matric with flying colours. I was still at home because my marks were not good for me to get a bursary and my family could not afford to take care of my education. My brothers left and I was left at home. That is not necessary now.

When Fiona got accepted I was happy for her but worried that I might lose her. She assured me. I was shaking when she told me the news. She then said she will let me be her first and last. I was happy, we became intimate and I felt connected to her. We were both clumsy because it was our first time for both of us. When she left I was heartbroken but she made me feel better by calling and coming home frequently. Then the second year things changed. It was one call the whole month and she never came home all the holidays only in December because

there was no way she was going to spend her Christmas in Johannesburg.

When I went to see her with a happy smile ever because I was excited she was finally going to be in my loving arms. What I saw shocked me. The Fiona I knew and loved was gone all that was left was the artificial Fiona. She just looked at me like I was nothing. I still feel the pain as if it were yesterday. She told me I was not her class.

I was heartbroken I begged her for the whole holiday to no avail. Her pa told her that she will regret but the mother encouraged her I was surprised because she was my number one fan I think money really does make the world go round. They went shopping with the mother. When asked where the child was getting the money she said she had two bursaries which was a lie because my brother Sambulo found out that she was dating a very older guy who had money and power.”

Busi: “Her friend’s brother.”

Kian: “I guess so because I heard yesterday. I remember I lost weight her ma was also saying I am sick that is why her daughter left me. I remember the following year before she went back I even grovelled and told her that I was going to forgive her and move on we will pretend it never happened. She blankly told me that I will never be good enough for her financially and my appearance cramped her style. From that

day I stopped. I removed her number from my phone and started afresh. Without my family I don't think I would have survived. People have a perception that men do not love like women and they don't cry but I say you won't if you have never loved like I did.

My life became a routine. I stopped dreaming and focused on my life and the farm because I knew it was going to be mine. I knew I was never going to go anywhere so I might as well accept my life. I concentrated on the farm and I was inquisitive so my dads taught me what I needed to know. All three of them were happy that I channelled my energy to positive things. I may not be a somebody but I know I have roots and I would love to go back to the farm and maybe raise my kids there.

I know I have unresolved issues with Fiona but I will never go back to her no matter what. A man is supposed to keep his dignity for him to gain respect from the family and community but she stripped that from me and I always feel naked because that is what she did to me. She stripped me naked. I am slowly gaining my dignity as a man; she just came; she wants to turn my world upside down. Do you know how it felt to get two distinctions last semester when she had told me that I was never going to make it in life because I was dump? When I got those distinctions I knew that only God knows our abilities.

First day here was a struggle because I knew I was going to be one of the few people who are in their late twenties doing first year. When I met the Ghost I was sceptic about getting close to him but he imposed; when he heard my age he didn't even blink and accepted me as I was. I regained my confidence then he boosted it by telling me that I had potential; he helps me without judging that I am dumb. Those are the people I want in my life not Fiona who will take me down after working so hard to move away from the past."

When I finished her eyes were glossy but she was trying hard not to cry. I got closer to her and brought her to my chest.

Kian: "Ssshhhh don't cry baby."

She giggled

Busi: "I can't help it. It's so sad that people are still judging people for things they can never change. For your own information you are not dumb. Just because you do not hold the same standards as perceived by others does not make you dumb. You are good at farming and if I go to the farm I will know nothing there but that does not make me dumb because I know nothing about farming."

She was so right and she had a heart and mind.

Kian: "I am glad you are here. Now please tell me about your scars."

She flinched and attempted the move away from me.

Busi: "My scars are deep too. I am deeply scarred but I have to go home it's late."

Kian: "Aren't we clever."

She giggled again

Busi: "Not at all my parents are banking on me to be responsible and take care of my siblings. Bukhosi is old but we supervise him so it's my duty when they are not around."

Kian: "Reasonable enough but you are not off the hook yet Mrs."

She smiled and then frowned.

Busi: "Mrs what?"

Kian: "I will finish it when you tell me all about your scars."

Busi: "You are not fair and you will definitely pay for this."

Kian: "But baby."

We both laughed. I was getting comfortable with her and I was going to fight tooth and nail to keep us. I wanted to take us further so I was willing to do anything.

Busi: "Let me go." We stood up and she came to my arms. We hugged passionately for a while in silence only our hearts communicated. "The past is the past do not doubt yourself

because you are different. Sometimes it's good to be different do not care what people in the past said you have your family, Ghost and I we care about you."

This felt right it melted my heart and I wish I had stayed there for eternity but reality struck.

Kian: "This feels right. I wish we can be like this forever."

Busi: "There is a time for everything."

I hugged her tight and she fitted perfectly in my arms her petite body felt warm. I kissed the tip of her head and let go.

Kian: "I like you a lot and my heart beats only for you."

Her eyes popped because she was not prepared for that. Her mouth was about to hang open then I stopped it with a breath taking kiss. It felt right our souls connected she enjoyed it; I was over the moon. I got to have this woman I was saying it in my mind

Busi: "I have to go."

She said after breaking the kiss and taking her keys with the phone. She was flashed so was I, it was really getting hot for us. The connection was out of this world but I didn't want to rush her at the same time and risk losing her.

I took her to her car in silence because we both knew we were going to say something that would break us or build us. That's

how connected our souls were. When we reached the parking lot I didn't care who was looking I hugged her for my dear life and then opened the car for her after that.

Kian: "Drive safe; call me when you get home."

She nodded I believe not trusting her voice because mine was shaky too. When she drove off I just watched and felt the pain in my heart; was it that way when you loved someone. I loved Fiona but I never, not once felt that way. I got to the flat and made a light meal. When I was about to study there was a knock at the door.

"Please God do not let it be the chipmunk or their boss."

I slowly dragged my feet hoping the person will go away but the knock became louder and I had to rush before the neighbours complained. I was opening with an angry face but when I opened my heart skipped a million beats.....

12

I smiled from ear to ear.

Kian: "What are you doing here and why would you be knocking when you have the key?"

Ghost: "Told you my mom and dad love sex so I am enough with them not going to add any more explicitly scenes."

Kian: "What are you talking about?"

I laughed; I missed him so much life was so miserable the past few days without him.

Ghost: "Word out there says you have a girlfriend so I didn't want to catch you in the act."

Kian: "Word from whom? You are crazy."

Ghost: "Now you letting me stand in the door in my flat is the crazy part." I laughed hard because last time I checked I was the owner of the flat I even had the lease agreement to prove that. As if he knew what I was thinking. "The lease agreement doesn't prove a thing dude because I know what's mine when I see it."

I laughed hugged him and helped him with his laptop bag.

Kian: "I thought you were going to come after the weekend."

Ghost: "And miss the news never." I shook my head. "At first I thought that was an act so what about this?"

He said opening his laptop and showing me what he was talking about. It was a picture of me hugging Busi in the parking lot earlier. I was surprised so people really had time to follow someone for the hack of it.

Kian: "I didn't know that cars had eyes because I didn't see anyone in the parking lot earlier on."

Ghost: "This is a student building dummy so yes their cars have eyes."

Kian: "What?"

The way he laughed at me I even laughed at myself.

Ghost: "You should have seen your face. What I am trying to tell you is that students love social media and they will do anything to trend. So the person who sent that picture is famous now because he/she gets to brag that they are staying with Mr famous/ farm boy."

I laughed at his last statement.

Kian: "So why would you think we were having sex?"

Ghost: "Hellooooo people who are dating do have sex."

Kian: "Not always."

Ghost: "Aha, so you are admitting that you are dating."

Kian: "No I did not I was saying that people....."

Ghost: "No need to explain yourself because I am not dumb like you think in these things; I know how these things work.."

Kian: "Amen."

Ghost: "Do not dismiss me I am not done."

Kian: "I can't even believe myself that I missed this."

He had a smile on his face the fool.

Ghost: "So you did miss me. Come on big bro I missed you too."

He attacked me with a hug again.

Kian: "Homo." We both laughed

Ghost: "So tell me; how was the sex?"

Kian: "Eew dude you are under eighteen and we are still friends she said we can be besties."

Ghost: "Woooooo friend zoned; my brother up your game."

He said with that American ascent I just laughed.

Kian: "I am still working on my magic man."

Ghost: "This pic is telling me otherwise. Look at her body language that's not a friend zone body language."

I looked at the picture closely and I couldn't even see what he meant. Was I that clueless?

Kian: "What do you know about body what what?"

Ghost: "You might be surprised stick with me and I will school you."

Kian: "Who will school who when you are just a kid and you don't have a girlfriend?"

Ghost: "You will be surprised because right now I know there are conflicts of interests because Fiona is breathing fire."

What the.....Was this boy normal?

Kian: "What are you talking about?"

He pointed at his laptop where she was verbally attacking someone online in my picture with Busi.

Ghost: "This girl still has hots for you but her pride made her do it?"

Kian: "Do what?"

Ghost: "It's just a metaphor silly."

Kian: "Whose metaphor because I have never heard of that?"

Ghost: "Mine, enough about English lessons we are both not English, you are a Boer and I am Scottish so English is not both our mothers."

I was cracking up with laughter.

Kian: "What did you smoke on your vacation?"

I air quoted "vacation" I was still laughing.

Ghost: "If I smoked I would be down and dull my adrenaline is good enough for my energy no need to smoke. What I want to hear are details."

Kian: "Are you sure there is not a girl trapped in your body?"

Ghost: "I wish but then I wouldn't be this smart because my sisters are slow."

Kian: "I will tell them."

Ghost: "Stop avoiding the questions and be a good boy." I laughed and told him everything. "Damn, do you realise that your three days are more eventful than my whole life and yours combined. Or scratch that and Nono's life combined." I laughed

Kian: "You are sick."

Ghost: "You are right; sick to my stomach that I am so boring and life is passing me by while you live your whole life in just three days."

That was his way of simple telling me that my life was so dull and boring prior to the previous three days.

Kian: "I am not that boring."

Ghost: "See there that's a unicorn." I laughed hard.

Kian: "That was a real metaphor not the ones you are inventing yourself."

Ghost: "So do you still have a thing for Fiona?"

Kian: "Not after the kiss with my queen this afternoon no."

Or snap I was not ready to tell anyone.

Ghost: "The what?"

Kian: "Nothing major."

Ghost: "No

Advertisement

no, no, no, no one leaves Thuto hanging."

Kian: "You do that to me all the time."

Ghost: "Because I invented suspense so I am allowed to do that."

Kian: "You what? Never mind do not answer me but I will tell you anyway because I don't want you hanging over me like a mosquito."

We both laughed I then relayed the events as they were.

Ghost: "I do not trust Fiona and the chipmunks a bit. Be careful because I do not want to go to jail."

Kian: "Why would you be going to jail if I may ask?"

Ghost: "If you stick around them they will hurt my B and if they hurt her I will murder someone."

I laughed

Kian: "Since when is she your B."

Ghost: "Since she was kissed by my big brother."

I was beyond hurting from the laughter.

Kian: "We are not dating."

Ghost: "Yet."

Kian: "What do you mean?"

Ghost: "It is just a matter of time because no girl would want you to be her first then remain only friends with you."

Kian: "If you say so."

Ghost: "So if ever they come closer and hurt her I will pour acid on them, their families too I can even drive to Mooi. While at it I will kill their pets and animals just for the heck of it."

Kian: "Definitely there is one bolt missing in your head."

Ghost: "If the bolt was there I would be normal and boring you see." We laughed

Kian: "So tell me your mom said we will only see you weekend."

Ghost: "Yes it was supposed to be like that but they butchered us so we were beaten before we could go to the semi-finals."

Kian: "I am sorry about that."

Ghost: "No I am not sorry maybe the coach will realise his mistakes soon. For now I am good when they whip our asses."

I couldn't hold my laugh

Kian: "I am supposed to record you so that when you are gone I will be watching you."

Ghost: "Not going to happen because when you want to play it virus will attack it."

Kian: "We will see about that."

He laughed. After our chat we studied and to my surprise he was even ahead of us. This tutor knew his work if only I had money I was going to go for him too. I was not complaining because my Ghost was helping me a lot. I was doing great without complaints from my lecturers.

The week that followed was busy but we kept in touch with my queen. Fiona was scarce and her chipmunks. Her words still haunted me when she bragged and said her chipmunks were not my type but I was not going to entertain her.

Second semester came and went with me improving I even got four distinctions. My family also said I will have to only come

back home December because I was going to be the only child there anyway. But I was not buying it. I think they were hiding something from me. I was not going to entertain that too. So I spent my time with Ghost and Busi some days. She took me shopping. We had not talked about the kiss afterwards. The connection was growing daily but we chose to ignore it because we were getting to know each other.

Busi: "Shopping with you is harder than I thought." We both laughed.

Kian: "You and Ghost are making me a charity case."

Busi: "If we want to spoil our friend?"

Kian: "I am spoiled already and it's enough."

Busi: "If I want to spoil my man then."

Kian: "Where is your man?"

Busi: "I am looking at him."

Kian: "Where?"

I pretended to look back and she got angry I just laughed at her.

Busi: "I am not playing with you."

Kian: "The last time I checked you said we are still besties."

Busi: "Okay bestie."

That was my chance I had to strike while the iron was still hot.
God I was thinking like ghost.

Kian: "Busisiwe I do not want to be your friend anymore."

She laughed at the name but stopped when realising what I said after her name.

Busi: "What do you mean?"

Her face had hurt written all over her.

Kian: "Not like that. Please I have been patient enough now I don't even want to hold back. I tried but the more I try the more I fall in love with you. I love you and I want us to explore this. I know I am not a perfect man but I hope I will make you happy."

Busi: "Yes."

Kian: "I do not have much to..... wait a minute you said yes."

She smiled. I put down what I was carrying and spun her around. That was the best day of my life.

Busi: "I am officially insane."

Kian: "No my love you are just taking a leap of faith and you are taking it with me."

Busi: "Please do not hurt me because I am not strong like my mom."

Kian: "What really happened?"

Busi: "Let's not spoil our day because I am happy that I can finally be free I thought you will never ask." I took her to my arms.

Kian: "So you also had feeling but you couldn't tell me." She nodded. "Why my love if I may ask?"

Busi: "You are the man you are supposed to chase after the lady not the other way round."

Kian: "My lady. My queen."

She blushed and I just kissed the day-lights out of her.

Busi: "I missed those lips."

Kian: "They are all yours. You should have asked but now no more asking I give you permission to command me master." She was all shy on me I had to lift her head from the chin with my index finger "Hay, I am all yours I know this is new to you but please be free with me like you were free when we were besties."

Busi: "I guess you are right; now give your master some sugar."

I laughed at the way she said it when she was about to pout I smashed my lips on hers.

Kian: "I love you."

Busi: "I love your full lips too." We laughed.

Kian: "If you don't love me then I will give you the lips only."

Busi: "You know I love you silly and without those full lips I wouldn't love you more."

We hugged and I couldn't love her more. While we were that happy and excited my phone beeped when I opened the message I got the shock of my life.....

13

I was hyperventilating. How could this happen just on the day when I was getting to celebrate my new love.

I looked at the message again because I wanted to make sure I was not hallucinating.

Busi: "Baby, are you okay?"

Hearing her say that made my heart skip a bit. I have waited for so long to hear her say that to me. There was no way I was going to tell her on our first day of dating.

Kian: "Nothing"

Busi: "Why do you look like you have seen a ghost?"

I faked a laugh

Kian: "Come on my love it's the Ghost I think he is stalking us that's why I am shocked because he just said I must kiss you again."

She blushed and I sighed with relief

Busi: "Ghost will always be ghost but I will not give him the satisfaction."

Kian: "But baby I....."

Busi: "No, tell ghost I will kill him."

She laughed

Kian: "Okay, now may I please kiss my woman?"

Busi: "Yes daddy."

Kian: "Mmmmmm come to papa." She blushed but I didn't let her get away with it because I just took her lips to mine and I didn't give her a breather. "If I knew that I would taste these juicy lips I would have made my move a long time ago."

Busi: "I can't even get enough of your lips Mr."

Kian: "You and lips."

Busi: "Do you blame me though?"

Kian: "Not at all love. So may we go home my feet are killing me?"

Busi: "Yes please and you will drive me home after we drop these.."

Kian: "Who will drive me back home?"

Busi: "You will take the car and come pick me up in the morning we are spending our last day of our holiday together."

Kian: "What will your parents say?"

Busi: "No worries they will even throw a ball for me that I am finally dating."

Kian: "What?"

Busi: "I thought you knew my family better by now. My granny in Canada would tell me that my mom was married at my age and as for her she was married just two years after matric to my granddad. She even said she will come to South Africa just to take me to a sangoma."

I laughed hard.

Kian: "What is she doing in Canada?"

Busi: "She is married to Grandpa Russell so they have businesses there."

Kian: "Which grandma are you talking about?"

Busi: "You will get to know them soon don't worry. I have family all over the world."

Kian: "What?"

Busi: "I am telling you."

Kian: "So if we mix both families then we will have a family reunion that will be even bigger than Madea's family reunion?"

Busi: "Can you just imagine that."

Kian: "So when are you going to tell me about your family?"

Busi: "Soon my love. Please bring the bags."

We were at my place thank God Ghost was not around.

Kian: "Okay baby take the keys and open for me please."

We went inside with the shopping bags. At least we had brought takeaways because we would have starved I was not in the mood to cook.

Kian: "Please eat with me then we will go when we have rested."

Busi: "Okay."

She said that going to serve us. I took my phone which had been vibrating since and switched it off. I was not going to fight with my woman because of a slut.

Kian: "Thank you very much love. I was charging my phone it is flat already."

Busi: "Okay love. So Ghost was busy stalking us?"

Kian: "Can you just imagine that?"

Busi: "Baby I think you have to look for a bigger flat because I would be sleeping over sometimes. Seing that you and Ghost are conjoined twins I would never ask him to vacate."

I laughed hard because of the way she said it.

Kian: "You are right because Ghost has been suggesting it but I was afraid I wouldn't afford it."

Busi: “Baby

Ghost and I are here so no need to worry.”

Kian: “See what I meant before. I am a man Busi I need to feel that I am a man so handout are killing my spirits.”

Busi: “Sorry I didn’t want to make you feel less of a man and I was just suggesting.”

She seemed hurt. I needed to trust that Busi was not Fiona and she was not going to leave me because she loved me from my rags.

Kian: “Sorry love I didn’t mean it like that. I know Ghost had been pestering me to look for a bigger place.”

Busi: “See what I mean?”

Kian: “Yes my love; tell you what we will look for it together.”

Busi: “Really?”

She looked happy and my heart skipped more beats. Busi was really not Fiona because she was excited about just simple things. From the start of our relationship Fiona had complained it’s only that I didn’t pay attention because I was so in love. So I thought.

Kian: “Yes my love you can even help me decorate the place.”

Busi: "I am so excited here; our own first place with two bedrooms."

Kian: "We can even have a three bed roomed just in case we have a little one."

I was just pulling her leg but her face; priceless.

Busi: "Baby, a little one will come but not now we have to finish studies and then we will build a home for our five kids."

My heart skipped a thousand times. What did I do to deceive a woman like her? She even saw a future with a farm boy.

Kian: "Why five?"

Busi: "Five is my favourite number."

Kian: "Thank you for loving me."

Busi: "I have never loved anyone. I never even saw a future with any of my suitors but I do see a future with you Kian I even picture our marriage also picture our wedding day."

I had a lump in my throat because I had been feeling worthless for so long.

Kian: "Come here." I didn't want to say more. "Thank you for loving me."

I took her to my arms and squeezed the life out of her. I released her; looked her deep in the eyes and I knew she was

not playing I kissed her so deep that we both were out of breath.

Ghost: "Hello under age here."

We both laughed because we were so caught up in the process that we didn't hear him coming in. Busi just buried her face on my chest and I felt like a rich man. All the money in the world could not make me happy the way I was that happy at that moment.

Ghost: "Get a room you two."

Busi: "At least we will have our room when we move from here."

Ghost: "So you managed to convince him to move?"

Busi: "I tried."

Ghost: "Please tell me the magic words you used because I have been trying to no avail."

Busi: "I am his heart."

Ghost: "You go girl do your thing."

Kian: "Hello I am still here."

Busi: "Sorry my love."

Ghost: "You are too invisible."

Kian: "Baby let me take you home before I murder someone."

They laughed.

Ghost: "Do not go on my account I will close my eyes while you two make babies."

Busi: "Thuto!!!!"

Kian: "You are crazy."

I was laughing and Busi laughed hiding her face in my chest.

Ghost: "What? If I didn't come in here you were going to do it because your tongues were wrestling like crazy. Is it even allowed? I think there is supposed to be a law against this?"

Kian: "Ghost what law is that?"

Ghost: "I bet the tongues are now reporting to the other body parts that you were abusive."

Busi: "Is that even possible?"

Ghost: "Who knows what body parts do when we are all sleeping?"

Kian: "You are insane."

Ghost: "Let this insane boy go and rest training was not good today."

Kian: "Okay I will talk to you when I come back."

Ghost: "I said I will not look."

We laughed as he winked at us. He left us looking at each other.

Busi: "I sent a message to my mom about the car she is okay with that but she needs to see you."

Kian: "Why?"

Busi: "Baby come on you are my first boyfriend ever so she would like to meet her son-in-law."

I was speechless.

Kian: "You told her already?"

She shook her head in a positive response.

Busi: "Actually I told Uncle Kay because we are close then he told his wife who is always forward."

Kian: "So your dad knows?"

Busi: "Don't worry; he is harmless."

I was panicking. I wanted this badly so I was going to suck it up.

Kian: "Let's go then so that they will crucify me once and for all."

Busi: "Baby!!!"

Ghost: "I do not wish to be you."

He was shouting from the bedroom.

Kian: "Stop eavesdropping kid."

Ghost: "Just saying. I will be waiting here with a bucket full of water to clean your ish from your pants."

Kian: "You are not helping."

He laughed uncontrollable and I was really panicking. I knew no dad wanted to let his daughter go.

Busi: "You will be fine baby. I love you and I will never take you to a lion's den intentionally."

Kian: "If you say so and I love you more. Now give daddy some sugar."

Busi: "All yours my love."

Ghost: "Eew."

Kian: "We are leaving."

I took her hand and the car keys on the table while she took her handbag.

Ghost: "Who is cleaning your mess?" He said coming to the sitting room

Kian: "The youngest."

Ghost: "Not fair, wish they will chase you with a gun for corrupting their princess. You found her pure and respectful but now her lips are no longer virgin lips because of you."

Busi laughed hard because if ghost wanted me to freak out it was really working.

Kian: "You are already freaking me out."

Busi: "Come baby leave him. Let us go I do not want you driving back late."

Ghost: "With what car."

Busi: "Our car."

I clicked my tongue at him.

Ghost: "What did you give her? I would love to go to the farm maybe Nono will be screaming my name before long."

We laughed and we left him there.

Busi: "Does he even get angry or he is always this bubbly."

Kian: "Since I met him I have never seen him angry. I wouldn't even want to see him angry because he always makes my day so when he is angry I will never be lonely."

Busi: "You are right."

We talked about other things then I remembered that I left my phone but I was glad because I was not in the mood for what was in there.

Kian: "Eish baby I forgot the phone."

Busi: "Don't worry you will be coming back soon."

Problem solved; we continued chatting. When we got there I was beyond freaking out, I was sweating even in the wrong places. When she got in we were greeted by her mom from the hall way. She was really beautiful in person and she looked young she was smiling from ear to ear.

Her: "You are here my babies."

She gave us hugs and I felt at ease. Up until the dad came he was a giant of a man and I felt so small in front of him

Him: "So you are the Kian."

He was smiling and I didn't know how to respond at all.

Busi: "Mom and Uncle Kay not in the hall way."

Him: "I am still your dad and the man of the house."

Busi: "Okay then daddy."

I smiled at their relationship and the mom was still smiling at us.....

14

Her: "Come this side my babies."

The father looked at Busi smiled then turned to me.

Him: "Can I speak to you in the study?"

Busi: "Daddy!!!"

Him: "I know when you call me "daddy" you want to soften me but it will never work sweetheart."

She giggled and I smiled inwardly.

Mom: "Be nice honey don't scare the boy away."

Dad: "I always play nice honey that's why you are always this happy."

Mom: "You know I wouldn't be anywhere else."

Busi: "Get a room you two."

Dad: "This is also a room our room. Isn't it, baby?"

Mom: "It is honey all of it."

I was just admiring them but also freaking out. Ghost was right I was going to do number two in my pants and they were baggy so I was going to make a mess.

Busi: "When you two are done with the lovey dovey you will find us in the living room."

She said taking my hand.

Dad: “Busisiwe are you tired of living? Do you have a death wish because I have an itchy hand to sign I might as well sign your death certificate.”

Busi: “Uncle Kay!!!”

Mom: “Leave my daughter alone.”

Dad: “I am just pulling your leg. Ladies please go ahead we won’t be long.”

He had a smile in his face I was about to relax but it was short-lived because the moment he closed the door his face changed drastically.

I was scared

Uncle Kay: “Sit.”

I sat like a school boy caught missing his class.

Uncle Kay: “Kian right.”

I just nodded not trusting my voice

Uncle Kay: “Busi is my first child and I would do anything for her. In fact I would even go to mars for them all my babies. They are my world and my life just after my wife. I loved her since high school and I love her more as the years pass. I will die for them any other day moreover I will also kill for them.”

I was feeling my pants getting wet. Just kidding but that was the feeling. I nodded again and looked at him as he continued.

Uncle Kay: "My daughter has been through a lot that's why of all my children I feel the need to protect her more. She experienced a lot in her young life so I do not want anything happening to her. She might seem strong to you and happy but we worked hard for us to get her to that point. She has never relapsed since her therapy so if she does now then it's on you."

That was some messed up ish if I were a coward I was going to run for the hills but I really loved Busi I was going to make her happy.

Uncle Kay: "After the love I have for God; then comes my family. They are my world and if you hurt my daughter the verse "Do not kill" will just fly off the window and I will use my gun. If I use it my wife will know that I have a gun and if she knows that I have a gun then she will freak. If my wife freaks hell breaks loose and if it does then I will be an unhappy man. If I am an unhappy man thencome on I don't have to spell it out to you; you are a very bright boy."

What the hell did I put myself into? Things we do for love.

Uncle Kay: "Do you understand where I am going and where I am coming from?"

Kian: "Ye.....yes sir."

He smiled from ear to ear gone was the serious man. How can one person just change within a few minutes?

Uncle Kay: "Do not call me sir. It makes me old. Call me Uncle Kay or daddy just like princess."

Kian: "Yes si..... yes Uncle Kay."

Uncle Kay: "Now tell me boy how did you crack the ice queen."

Was this man serious? He was literally laughing after threatening me and he expected me to laugh too. I soften a little even though I was still shaky.

Kian: "I am not sure."

Uncle Kay: "I have respect for you son; if you could make my daughter this happy then you are worthy the time."

Kian: "Thank you."

Uncle Kay: "Do not thank me yet keep making her happy then you and I will be buddies." This family was something else. "I do not drink or smoke so I was going to give you a shot or a cigar."

Kian: "Oh"

Uncle Kay: "You seem disappointed."

Kian: "Not really I am surprised at the fact"

Uncle Kay: "Do not be so disappointed, but then there is always a hand shake."

Kian: "Yes Uncle Kay."

We stood up; more like I stood up because all along he had been hovering over me and then we shook hand. He had a firm hand and he was big I felt small and lost.

We left with him telling me stories about his daughter who was always nagging the father to take her to work hence studying medicine like the father.

We laughed as we approached the lounge

Mom: "I take it all went well when you are both in one piece."

Dad: "Baby why would we be in pieces?"

Mom: "I could think of a number of reasons."

Dad: "Yea of little faith."

They both laughed and I realised Busi was not there.

Mom: "Looking for your woman already?"

I looked down embarrassed.

"Do not worry she will be down soon. She was telling Beli that you....."

I looked at the doorway and it was the boy from University on the wheelchair.

Busi: "Bran no lies please."

He laughed

Bran: "So you are the one who has been corrupting my sister."

Mom: "Bran, behave."

Bran: "Mommy I am the big brother remember?"

Mom: "Yes my boy."

He was a mommy's boy.

"We all know you are the big brother dude."

The other boy came in. He stopped when he saw us.

Him: "Mommy are you adopting this one too so that he becomes our bigger brother because I am tired of your spoilt son."

As he said that he was sitting on top of the mother I just laughed at who was mommy's boy. They were still laughing at his comment.

Busi: "No one is adopting my boyfriend I am still the first born respect please."

We laughed. I was become at ease.

"Technically if he is your boyfriend then he is our big brother. Hence the word "brother-in-law" I wonder why you became a doctor."

They laughed

Mom: "Leave my daughter alone Belinda. Princess you should prescribe medication for sanity for your sister."

Beli: "Mommy."

Dad: "Leave my daughter alone."

Beli: "Thank you daddy."

It was so fun also funny that; girls were daddy's girls and boys were mommy's boys. I really loved them from the onset.

Beli: "So this is Kian?"

Busi: "Yes dummy."

Beli: "I was just asking because we were not formally introduced."

Bukho: "Who is Kian?"

Busi: "You are still young."

Bukho: "Mommy

Advertisement

your daughter."

Mom: "She is your sister."

I was just smiling from ear to ear. I was smiling because I was also realising that all their names started with a B. I was just wondering who was obsessed with letter B.

Kian: "Baby."

They all looked at me I wish I had kept quiet but I needed to go.

Mom: "Sorry we never formally introduced you to the family."

Kian: "No it's okay ma'am I"

Mom: "Not okay with me."

Introductions were made and I was so happy because they never judged me about my background or what so ever.

Mom: "One more thing. Better call me Portia, mom, Mrs P. Whatever you prefer but never call me ma'am."

Me: "Yes ma..... yes Mrs P."

Mom: "Much better."

I laughed.

Busi: "Are you okay baby?"

Dad: "The boy is fine."

Kian: "I am good love I have to go before it gets late."

Mom: "You are not going on an empty stomach because it's a duty of the mother to make sure kids are well fed."

Kian: "I am not....."

Dad: "If you know what's best for you boy never argue with queen P."

They all laughed looking at me.

Bukho: "You will never win even if you tried."

Mom: "Bukhosi get off me."

Bukho: "Mommy."

Dad: "My wife has spoken Bukho."

They laughed again. I really loved this family and it made me love her more.

Mom: "It's settled then let's go and eat."

Bran: "Yes ma'am. Finally I was about to collapse."

Beli: "You are always hungry these days."

Bran: "I am still older than you."

Beli: "Technically."

Busi: "May we please not have any twin episodes for today?"

Oh, so they were twins. I thought as much.

Dad: "I am hoping for that too. So let us go eat in peace."

Bukho: "Yes daddy."

They all laughed but I didn't see anything funny then Busi whispered to me.

Busi: "Since he was young he always said "Yes" to everything so we always mock him for that. It never stopped but he forgets sometimes."

Kian: "Okay I get it."

We sat on the table and the mother said grace before we ate. They were a chatty family. I was uneasy at first but I lightened up.

Beli: "So big sis did you see that your boyfriend is white?"

We all laughed at her lame remark.

Busi: "Helllllooooo Belinda you are also white."

Beli: "Daddy am I white?"

Dad: "Baby we don't want to choke because your mom's food will go to waste and as for me I am still enjoying it."

Beli: "I am black but it's fine if you say I am white."

Mom: "Do not mind her. As you can see in this family we only look at the heart and if your heart is not pure then out you go through the window."

She was laughing but it was the same treat as her husband's I could tell.

Busi: “Mom enough and Beli I told you he was white from the start.”

Beli: “I thought maybe you were joking like the time you said he was not your boyfriend.”

Bran: “He was not; he has been a boyfriend for less than 24hours.”

Amen. They fist bumped with Bukho.

Busi: “Do not tell me you are hacking in my devices again.”

Bukho: “Not me at all I respect my sister.”

Busi: “Mommy!!!”

Mom: “Boys this time you will be in trouble.”

I just laughed at how quickly they turned to being scared. This woman was small but she sure had control over her family. We enjoyed the early supper then I left. When I got home I was surprised that Ghost was waiting for me.

Ghost: “I am waiting”

Please God take me now.....

15

He was even standing folding his arms in a ready position.

Kian: "Dude let me freshen up first."

Ghost: "Not going to happen because you tricked me once and once bitten twice shy."

I laughed because I once let him believe that I was going to help him after my bath then I was gone the moment my head hit the pillow.

Kian: "Okay you are really a pest."

Ghost: "I know the right pesticide."

Kian: "Which is?"

Ghost: "Give me what I want and all will be well."

Kian: "Fine then."

Ghost: "Hello quit stalling."

I smiled and told him every detail.

Ghost: "You didn't even sh*t your pants?"

Kian: "I almost did."

Ghost: "Then you stayed till dinner."

Kian: "What was I going to do?"

Ghost: "Hell

Advertisement

run for your life."

Kian: "I love Busi; if I had ran for the hills I was going to lose her."

Ghost: "Love or no love I am not going to stand a gun pointed in my head."

Kian: "He didn't point it at me."

Ghost: "Metaphorically yah he did. He has a gun damn."

Kian: "I am not sure about that."

Ghost: "So you will wait and see what he does to you when you mess up?"

Kian: "What do you want me to do?"

Ghost: "Run for my life."

I laughed.

Kian: "You are right to say "Run for my life" because it is your life; not mine."

We both laughed

Ghost: "Okay buy a gun too."

Kian: "What? Are you crazy?"

Ghost: "Not at all. Hear me out."

Kian: "I know what will come out of your mouth will be crap."

Ghost: "How can you say that? I am a good boy I only crap the stale food from my stomach you know."

I give up; Ghost will never change even if you take him to a prophet. I was saying inwardly because if I said it to his face he was going to tell to go to the prophet first for not running away from a gun.

Kian: "Okay good boy now that we have established that I am not running to the hills then what should I do."

Ghost: "Hang yourself."

Kian: "What?"

We just laughed

Ghost: "On a serious note I am with Mr Kay on that one. You hurt her I will join the gun club and shoot you myself."

Kian: "What?"

Ghost: "I am not joking on this one. Busi is a good person I know that because she can choose anyone in the world with money and class. Even if she clicks her fingers she can get a

man but she chose you. It shows a lot so if you hurt her in any way I will never forgive you.”

Somehow his words did not hurt me but they made me realise that I was lucky to have her as my partner because despite all my upbringing I was able to get the most beautiful woman on earth. While I was contemplating he continued.

Ghost: “You have to play far from perverts like Fiona.”

Oh shiz niz when he said her name my heart skipped I went to my phone.

Ghost: “What is going on?”

Kian: “Let me call Busi first before she gets worried and I will show you something.”

Ghost: “Okay I want my laptop from the car.”

He said without waiting for my reply and rushing out. When I opened my phone messages came flooding I just ignored them and called my woman.

Busi: “Baby, do not do that to me. I was worried sick.”

Kian: “Sorry my love when I got here Ghost was waiting at the door.”

She laughed hard. “So am I forgiven?”

Busi: “Yes love I was just worried I wasn’t angry.”

Kian: "Baby I have something to tell you."

Busi: "Should I be worried?"

Kian: "Never. I want to tell you that I really love you with all my heart and please tell me when I am not doing anything right because I know this is your first relationship and what you are expecting you will have to get."

Busi: "That's so sweet love. I love you too and I am happy with our relationship. There is only one request from me."

Kian: "I am all ears my love."

Busi: "Please do not hurt me because I do not want to relapse."

This was the second time I was hearing about relapse.

Kian: "I will not hurt you intentional because I love you. Tell me babes; what did you mean about relapse?"

Busi: "If you want to know about that then I will have to start from the beginning as in the beginning."

Kian: "I am all ears."

Busi: "Not now my love we need time."

Kian: "Okay I will get you in the morning."

Busi: "Yes my love about that I might not make it in the morning. You know that Uncle Muzi has his surgery. So I will be shadowing him in the morning."

To say I was disappointed was an understatement I was more than looking forward to the day with her but this was her life and our future which meant I had to support her.

Kian: "Okay my love no problem."

Busi: "I know that you are disappointed but I will make it up to you."

Kian: "Seriously?"

Busi: "Yes my love I will even pay double my price."

Kian: "I can't wait then."

We said our good nights and dropped the call. When I got to our bedroom ghost was busy on his laptop.

Kian: "You look serious."

Ghost: "I was checking my schedule for this final semester. I do not want any distractions."

Kian: "You are right."

Ghost: "So what did you want to show me?"

I gave him the phone and he was dumbstruck.

Ghost: "Please change your number and tell Busi."

Kian: "I tried telling her now but failed."

Ghost: "Try harder because this will be your downfall. I was telling you just now that this girl and her chipmunks will destroy your relationship if you don't wake up." I felt the chill in my body. What did the chipmunk want? "She doesn't even have half the body that Busi has yet she sends nudes to you."

Kian: "My question is how did they get my number?"

Ghost: "Simple Fiona has your number which means they are in this together."

Kian: "Please do your thing and block their numbers. What is this girl's name by the way?"

Ghost: "Micah or Michaela something like that."

Kian: "I don't even want to know."

Ghost: "Good because they are trouble I mean it Kian they will cause problems in your life."

He was right I didn't need people like that in my life. "Let's have some fun."

Kian: "What?"

Ghost: "I say let's play her and have some fun. Beat her in her own game."

Kian: "How?"

Ghost: "I will send these messages to Fiona and say wrong message then send them to the other chipmunk."

I laughed at his idea but when I looked at him he was as serious as they come.

Kian: "Whatever you decide as long as it won't come back and bite us."

Ghost: "Don't you have teeth to bite it back."

I laughed hard.

Kian: "I mean metaphorically."

Ghost: "I know what you mean dummy and for your own information I also meant metaphorical teeth if you know what I mean."

Kian: "No I don't."

Ghost: "Suite yourself; now let me."

He said doing what he knows best. Before long Fiona called.

Kian: "Hello Fiona."

Fiona: "Do not hello me when you are trying to frame my friend."

Obviously she was the naive one.

Kian: "Why would I have her nudes if I am not her type as you have put it across the other day?"

Fiona: "I don't know maybe you photo shopped."

Kian: "Can you even hear yourself? Do you think I am that technologically advanced; can a dumb person do that?"

I sensed that she was tensing. She was the one who said I was dumb so I was showing her how dumb I was.

Kian: "For your own information I have my hands full and I do not have time for pettiness. Between my school work and my woman I do not have time to learn technology and stalk nobodies. As you have pointed out before that I am as dumb as they come so I am trying to figure out how to get more dumb distinctions next semester. Oh and please tell your chipmunk with an ugly body to stop flaunting it because she will die when she sees my women's body in comparison."

I didn't wait for her to respond I just dropped the call.

Ghost: "You are on fire man."

Kian: "I feel like hitting something."

Before he could respond the phone rang and it was the ugly chipmunk.

Kian: "To what do I owe the pleasure your highness?"

Her: "Do not go all sarcastic on me. Why would you do that?"

Kian: "Why would I do what? I am the one who should be asking you that question not the other way round."

Her: "I thought you would feel something when you saw the pictures and....."

She didn't even finish because we were laughing with Ghost. She just dropped the phone. Ghost: "Now let us block them."

He did his things on the laptop.

Ghost: "This way you won't be tempted to unblock her because I will need to put a secure password."

Kian: "Let me guess I won't even know the password."

Ghost: "Exactly I am glad you know me well."

Kian: "It's fine by me."

I was not even moved because I needed to focus on my studies and my woman nothing else. When we were about to sleep my phone rang and I snapped thinking it was them again.

Kian: "What do you want?"

Voice: "Is that how you answer the phone now? Call home now....." The phone was dropped.....

16

Sambulo was just not fair; how could he? I called Pa his phone was off then I tried all my dads and same thing. The moms always switched off their phones during the night but I tried them anyway. With no luck I called Sam again and it rang unanswered.

“Damn!!!”

Ghost: “What the

Kian: “Please don’t.”

I ran to the bathroom because I suddenly had a running tummy. What was wrong with me? When I got back ghost was panicking. He was not helping because we were both panicking.

Ghost: “What is going on?”

Kian: “Sam just called me and said I should call home but when I am calling all their phones sends me to voicemail. He is not even picking up.”

Ghost: “What day is it?”

Kian: “What has this got to do with everything?”

Ghost: “I wanted to make sure that it was not the 1st of April.”

Kian: “Dude; come on.” I wanted to laugh.

Ghost: "See it lightened the mood. Now pack the overnight bag while I bring the car up front."

Kian: "Why?"

Ghost: "If we stay here we will both worry and keep wondering, so what better way than to worry on the road to the root of the problem."

Sometimes I wondered how God created him.

Kian: "So you want us to drive now?"

Ghost: "Hellooooo did you hear me say next year. Obviously we will drive there now. I am driving there because you are panicking but you are driving when we come back."

Kian: "Okay fine let me call Busi."

Ghost: "Amen."

Kian: "You must not judge because I am calling her to come and get the car. I do not want anything happening to it or else Uncle Kay....."

Ghost: "I know he will make you crap your pants."

Kian: "Don't even go there."

Ghost: "Let me pack too. What do we pack for the farm?"

Kian: "Don't even start with me."

We both laughed as I called Busi. She answered after I had redialled.

Busi: "Ilo."

Kian: "Sorry baby to wake you up."

Busi: "It's okay. Is everything okay?"

Kian: "Not really."

Busi: "What's going on?"

There was concern written all over her voice. I told her everything and she was also panicking.

Kian: "Baby, please."

Busi: "What if something happened?"

Kian: "I will see when I get home. The reason I called you is because I want to come and give you the keys to the flat and the car so that you will collect it tomorrow early."

Busi: "It will be a detour for you guys when going home so I will ask dad to come with me now."

Kian: "No I....."

She was not even listening to me I heard shuffling then I heard her shouting.

Busi: "Uncle Kay, daddy, please wake up."

Kay: "Is the house on fire?"

Busi: "Dad we need to go to Kian's flat now."

Kay: "Wowowowo what is going on?"

Busi: "Something happened at home and their phones are off. His brother is not answering the phone."

Kay: "I thought he was an only child."

Busi: "Yes he is, no he has..... dad it's not important I want to see him before he drives home and take the car keys."

Kay: "What?"

Busi: "Daddy you are wasting time."

Kay: "Baby

Advertisement

P, wake up."

Busi: "Why are you troubling mom?"

Mom: "What's going on sweetheart?"

She told them and I was still on the phone listening after a while she realised I was still online."

Busi: "Sorry baby."

Kian: "You love keeping me hanging."

She laughed

Busi: "No, we are on our way."

Kian: "It was really not necessary."

Busi: "I want to give you a kiss for the road so that you come back in one piece."

Kian: "In that case I will be waiting my love."

She giggled and dropped the phone.

Ghost: "On second thoughts I think talking to Busi was a good idea look at you all smiles."

Kian: "At least I will get a kiss for the road."

Ghost: "Eew, underage here."

I laughed.

Kian: "It's funny how you use that card when it suites you."

Ghost: "Because I am always the one holding the card."

I just shook my head. I went to the bedroom to take a few things because I did have a few things at home.

"Are you done?"

He was coming from outside.

Kian: "Yes just waiting for Busi."

Ghost: "Let me put these in the car."

He said taking the small bags and the laptop bags.

Kian: "I am leaving my laptop; too much baggage."

Ghost: "As if you will be carrying it, my car is not complaining but you are complaining. You really are an enemy of technology."

Kian: "There won't be any use because we are coming back tomorrow."

Ghost: "Who said I am coming tomorrow?"

Kian: "I give up."

I said lifting my hands in surrender

Ghost: "Just a simple question. I want to spend my weekend in the farm getting to know my new family."

Kian: "Okay suite yourself."

Ghost: "Then you will come alone tomorrow."

Kian: "Okay."

He laughed going out. I heard the door opening without looking I blurted out.

"I said it is fine I will come Sunday."

Busi: "So you will leave me alone?"

I turned and she was in a pink morning gown.

Kian: "Come here."

I enveloped her in my arms and she fitted perfectly.

Busi: "Are you really coming on Sunday?"

Kian: "Ghost is the one who wants to come Sunday. As for me I want to spend time with you but I do not have car."

Busi: "Take mine then."

Kian: "No my love I will convince him to come tomorrow."

Busi: "We both know you will never win."

Kian: "I will see if there is nothing serious at home I will take public transport."

Busi: "Don't worry just come early in the morning then."

Kian: "I will update you. Now why don't you give me sugar for the road?"

Busi: "Yes daddy."

Kian: "If you say that you awaken the sleeping tiger."

She giggled and I didn't think twice I kissed her passionately. She was clinging to me for her dear life. My temperature was rising and I was breathing fast. She broke the kiss and looked me straight in the eyes.

Busi: "There is more where that came from. You better rush and come back because you might get more than you are expecting."

She was biting her lower lip and she looked sexy.

Kian: "Do not do this to me love."

Busi: "I love you okay."

Kian: "I love you more my queen."

She giggled again. I really loved my woman people; I hugged her for the last time.

Busi: "Come my love, my mom is also in the car."

Kian: "Did you have to drag the poor woman?"

She giggled while we went outside.

Busi: "I will drive with mom back and Uncle Kay will follow us."

Kian: "Thank you very much for coming. I miss you already."

Busi: "I miss you more. Tell ghost we have to find a flat so use that as an excuse."

Kian: "You are a genius."

Busi: "I know right."

We both laughed

Mom: "You love birds are wasting our time."

Kian: "Sorry Mrs P."

Dad: "Call us when you reach home because if you don't I know Busi will stress."

Here I was thinking he cared about me only to realise it will always be his daughter first. Not that I was complaining it was okay with me.

Kian: "Yes Uncle Kay we will."

We said our goodbyes and left, with ghost breathing down my neck.

Ghost: "Why would you give her my set of keys? Why didn't you give her yours?"

Kian: "Are we still in the issue of keys?"

Ghost: "Yes we are because she is your girlfriend not ours."

Kian: "We are coming back together because we have to look for a bigger flat."

Ghost: "I might forgive you then."

I laughed because he was being unfair.

Kian: "So we are coming back tomorrow."

Ghost: "Yes we are; as long as I feel satisfied."

Kian: "Okay if you say so."

When we arrived home Sambulo was already there no wonder he couldn't answer the calls he was driving.

Sam: "You didn't have to come."

Kian: "I was worried all the phones were off and you were not answering."

Sam: "Sorry about that. They are still at the police station I wanted to go now but tata said we have to wait."

Kian: "Wait a minute; who is at the police station?"

Sam: "Pa and Baba."

Kian: "What did they do?"

Sam: "Tata said they are in for assault so I am not sure of the details because tata was also not home when he came here there was commotion and the police just took them in."

See the set up at the farm is: when you drive out of the homestead our home is the last and when you drive back it is the first so tata wouldn't have missed the commotion no matter what.

Kian: "What?"

Ghost: "Your dads are cool man."

Sambulo laughed and I just looked at him with a “don’t start” eye.

Ghost: “What? I was just saying.”

When I was about to ask there were cars coming in and some noises. We went outside running.

What the.....

17

We looked at each other I couldn't help it, I just laughed this was stupidly awesome. We drove all the way to see these drinking buddies perform their stupidity.

Ghost: "Why are your dads drunk and a police officer driving their car?"

Sam: "I thought they were arrested?"

Ghost: "Surely they are chatting to the supposedly arresting officers; they are buddies with the arrested."

Sam: "I wasted my fuel."

Ghost: "At least I came to the farm because I was tired of asking some people to bring me here."

I just laughed but Sam was beyond pissed. He went to them.

Sam: "Pa and Baba; are you really okay in your heads."

Baba: "Hay you, we are your elders. Who told you to come?"

Pa: "We were drowning our sorrows because soon we will be cellmates, jailbird."

They looked at each other put their hand on each other's shoulders and laughed their lungs out. I couldn't help it but laugh also.

Sam: "We drove all the way here for....."

Baba: "If we wanted you here we would have called you ourselves."

Pa: "We would have driven there drunk or not."

Officer 1: "Here are the car keys we will be on our way."

Sam: "What happened?"

Officer 2: "They will be fine the lawyer will handle everything."

Kian: "So you were really arrested?"

Baba: "So he talks. This boy can talk."

He looked at pa and they laughed again.

Ghost: "I love your parents. They have a sense of humour I wonder where yours went."

Pa: "So you brought the Ghost?"

Kian: "Pa....."

Baba: "We want to talk to Ghost."

They went inside the house and as soon as the police officers left we talked, Sam and I because ghost was inside with them.

Kian: "We shouldn't have come. We wasted our money."

Sam: "Let us hear what happened because the officers said the lawyer will handle it."

Kian: "Do you think they are in a state to tell us what's going on or they will tell us in the morning?"

Sam: "You know them as for me I am going to rest because I will be driving back I took a day off when I didn't want to because I wanted to accumulate more leave days."

Kian: "I will have to take care of my room."

Sam: "Okay let me drive home I will leave you to your fathers."

We both laughed as he drove home. I got inside and they were chatting to Ghost. I just proceeded to my room to make it ready. To my surprise it was clean and I was happy. I went to fetch Ghost and our bags.

Ghost: "I was sitting with legends and you want me to come and be with boring you."

I just laughed

Kian: "When you want to sleep then you know where the bed is."

Ghost: "I am not driving so I will sit with those old men and hear their stories."

Kian: "Suite yourself let me sleep."

Ghost: "You must call your wife because she is probably fuming wherever she is."

Shiz niz, I forgot; I was going to get into trouble.

Ghost: "Let me leave you to your punishment."

Kian: "What punishment."

Ghost: "Once you date you have an authority that you report to. Like right now your wife needs a report then your dads and your moms your dogs and your cows and your....."

Kian: "Okay I get it go; be with the old people then"

Ghost: "Sore loser."

I hit him with the pillow as he ran outside. I immediately called Busi I had expected it to ring countless times but she answered on a second ring.

Kian: "Are you not sleeping baby?"

Busi: "I was waiting for your call. I couldn't sleep I was worried."

Kian: "Ah shame my beautiful baby. Sorry for getting back you late there was drama when we got here."

Busi: "So do you know what is going on?"

Kian: "Not yet. They are drunk to talk something productive; I do not know what to make of the situation. What I know is that they were arrested and they came back home with the police officers drunk and the word lawyer thrown around so I am not sure what to make of it."

Busi: "What?"

Kian: "Yep."

Busi: "So why are you so calm?"

Kian: "What am I supposed to do my love? They are happy enjoying themselves so why would I stress?"

Busi: "Okay love thanks for calling."

Kian: "Do not dismiss me baby I still want to hear your voice."

Busi: "My love, remember I will be going to work in a few hours. Uncle Muzi is a very strict boss he wants everything done perfectly. He is my uncle yes but I do not have to be incompetent because he is paying me the same amount as others."

Kian: "What? He is paying you?"

Busi: "Yes he is paying us not just me because we will be working."

Kian: "So what are we going to buy for us with the money?"

She giggled

Busi: "We will talk about it when you come home soon."

Kian: "I can't wait."

Busi: "I love you."

Kian: "Love you more."

Busi: "What happened to the "I"?"

Kian: "What are you talking about?"

Busi: "You said "Love you too" instead of "I love you too."

Kian: "Oh, sorry my princess. I love you too."

Busi: "Better. Good night daddy."

The way she said it made me want to drive all the way to Gauteng. We said our goodbyes and I dropped the call.

I slept like a baby after the call. I had even forgotten that I came with Ghost I only registered it when I saw him snoring softly next to me. I just got up and went to the bathroom. When I was done I went out thinking I was the early bird only to find pa as sober as a judge. He was even fresh as if he was not drunk the previous night.

Kian: "Pa

Advertisement

you are up early."

Pa: "I am always an early bird."

He was laughing.

Kian: "But you were drunk a few hours ago."

Pa: "We are not small babies. We were not even drunk it was like we drank water."

While we were outside Sambulo drove in with baba and tata. Even baba looked fresh.

Baba: "Why are you looking at me like I am going to be your breakfast?"

Kian: "Baba, I am not looking at you I am just admiring nature."

Baba: "Am I nature"

We all laughed.

Tata: "Morning."

Kian: "Morning tata, how are you?"

Tata: "I am okay."

Ghost: "Your stupid girlfriend was licking me."

We all laughed at him because he looked freaked out.

Sam: "What girlfriend?"

Ghost: "A white kitty."

We cracked up with laughter.

Kian: "Her name is Betty and she will never lick you, she is scared of strangers."

Ghost: "What is this?"

He showed us his cheeks I just laughed

Baba: "You are loved. It was your welcome from the farm."

Pa: "I believe other animals sent her to welcome you."

Ghost: "So you were serious when you told me that you talked to animals; so animals here do talk."

We laughed at him.

Kian: "I was just pulling your leg and pa is just scaring you."

Ghost: "Hell yah I am scared I almost sh....."

He trailed because everyone was laughing at him.

Tata: "Let us go inside and talk."

Kian: "Go and bath I will talk to Betty."

Ghost: "Just do it fast because I am in a murderous mood."

We got inside and I placed Betty in her cage while we went to the sitting room to talk.

Baba: "My kids sorry we did not want to scare you. Langa didn't have to call you because it was something we could handle."

When things were serious it was always baba Khumalo to talk because he was the glue of the family. He commanded respect and everyone respected him including pa.

Baba: “Kian; your mother is back home.” My heart just skipped I was sweating. He continued after looking at our facial expressions. “Then I come to the point why we were arrested. Her lover came to drop her here as if she was a parcel. He said he was tired of taking care of her because she has been in and out of hospital. He said his money is for better things. Your ouma called us and we went there armed.”

Sam & Kian: “What?”

Tata: “I knew you two are always up to no good.”

Sam: “At least tell me you didn’t kill him.”

Pa: “I would have killed him if Mdue didn’t stand in my way.”

Baba: “I wanted to do the honours but your pa distracted me and I missed. He took her here when she had a family now he can’t just drop her and we just look to the side. We needed to show him that we are not puppets.”

Pa: “Yes, we are one family here they need to know that. She might have hurt us but we do not show to strangers that we are fighting. He ran for the hills, he even forgot his car on his way out so we redecorated it for him.”

Oh no, I knew that one and I knew then that they did a number on it.

Tata: “You love trouble.”

Baba: "Trouble came to us and we reacted. At least we will share the cell."

He surely knew how to lighten the mood.

Tata: "So what did the lawyer say?"

Pa: "Not much he said he will get him to drop the charges if possible. I will do it all over again if you know what I mean."

They laughed

Baba: "So Kian we would like to hear from you because she is your mother."

I didn't know how to react because I was still confused. I never knew my mother the little I knew just diminished it was like it never existed. It was like it was a figment of my imagination.

Kian: "Pa she is your wife."

Pa: "Point of correction. She was, now I am happy because all I wanted was to see my son go far. Your results and the way you are happy keeps me going daily and I am content. I wished for this day to come but it never came sooner. I had even planned for the things I was going to say to her but now I feel nothing because I do not even love her anymore I just pity her. You should see her she is all broken that is why I wanted to kill that bastard. Your ouma wouldn't stop crying and I was hurt

because she is a good person and she does not deserve the hurt I saw in her eyes.”

Tata: “So why didn’t you kill him?”

Sam: “Now you are the one who is supporting their behaviour?”

Tata: “I was just saying. I do not like this person. I thought maybe he just came to visit. If he came to drop her for good then he deserve worse.”

Baba: “See my point.”

Pa: “Kian, all is up to you now.”

Kian: “I am.....”

Words couldn't even come out of my mouth. I didn't know what to say at all.

Kian: "I am sorry about what happened because you were protecting me somehow. I do not know what to say going forward."

Baba: "Whatever you want we will support you because as for us we won't lose anything if we were to decide to cut her off but as for you, she is still your mother no matter what."

Kian: "For now when we open I will be preparing for my final examinations. They are very crucial. I really worked hard to get where I am. I do not want to disappoint you as a family and above all I do not want to disappoint Thuto. He helps me all the times, even when he is tired from his training when I need his help he doesn't even think twice to help me. May I please revisit the issue after my exams when I come home for holidays?"

Baba: "It is understandable my boy, I do not know about the others but I am sure they understand."

Pa: "I am 100% behind you. You are lucky to have that boy so do not let that opportunity pass you by. I would love to see you go places and I would love to know that when I leave this earth you and your brothers are well taken care off. We are old there

is nowhere to go except to go to our graves. So what I am trying to say is whatever choice you make we will support you.”

Tata: “I know this might have come as a shock to you but all I want to ask of you is, take your time to reflect. What do you want to do? When you go back introspect and make sure that whatever decision you make it must not affect your future. The things we leave behind unsolved always come back in future to bite us. So make sure you don’t leave unresolved issues.”

Kian: “I hear everything you are saying. My decision is; I will go back to school and finish this semester. When I am done I will come straight home and then start with this. I have so much unanswered questions which I need to ask her. The problem is we have to drive back because we are opening on Monday and this is going to be the busiest and the toughest semester. If I do not get the answers I am expecting I am afraid I might not take it well.”

Baba: “That is all I wanted to hear. You have spoken like a true Zulu man.”

Tata: “Nope true Xhosa.”

Pa: “I give up.”

Sam: “It’s not all about true what note.....”

They all bust out with laughter.

Pa: "This English of yours is teaching you to tell us about what notes now." We laughed at least it lightened the mood. "All is well then. I wanted you to drive back early because I do not feel comfortable when you drive at night."

Kian: "It's okay pa."

Tata: "If you dare go back without seeing your mothers I think you will fail your exams."

We laughed

Sam: "Mom was asking for you this morning. Dad is right you will have to go and see them or else you will be in trouble."

Baba: "You might even lighten my wife because she is angry that I came home in the morning drunk. So because you are the one who brought your friend ghost who kept us all night then you have to soften my wife."

Pa: "You have to replace my whiskey because we ended up drinking it to make sure we keep up with that friend of yours."

Tata: "Where did you get that one?"

Kian: "He is a unique edition not even a limited edition."

Sam: "I was going to say order for me because I get lonely sometimes."

Baba: "Find a wife because you are old enough. Or do you want us to look for a traditional healer for you."

We laughed

Sam: "I am not lucky like K....."

Oh no he was going to get me into trouble."

Pa: "Finish your sentence. Like who? Kian, don't tell me you are dating now?"

I wanted the earth to open up and swallow me. They were all looking at me with scary eyes.

Sam: "Come on

Advertisement

Kian still believes Fiona is the only woman for him and he is afraid of girls."

At least he saved me.

Tata: "We were going to drive you back there if you had been busy with girls there."

Kian: "No tata; not now."

I was not ashamed of Busi no matter what. They were going to belt my "black" behind. They were always united in whipping our behinds.

Sam: "Let's go and see the moms."

Thank God they changed the subject swiftly.

Baba: "Put on a good word for me."

Sam: "As if he sent you."

They laughed.

Kian: "Let me check on Ghost I think he is done."

Sam: "I will wait in the car outside."

I went to check on Ghost and he was done bathing and ready.

Kian: "We are going to see the moms."

Ghost: "Where?"

Kian: "We will start with Mrs Langa then we will end at the Khumalo residence. They want us to go back early because they do not want us driving during the night."

Ghost: "I was getting started and I haven't enjoyed this place, except for Betty episode."

We laughed

Kian: "Why are you scared of cats?"

Ghost: "I am black."

Kian: "What has that got to do with cats? Besides you are not black."

Ghost: "Technically I am and we don't have the liberty to have pets in our culture and I hate fluffy things."

Kian: "Hell no, I am black too and even Nono has a bunny for a pet."

Ghost: "Really."

Kian: "Yes."

He was smiling from ear to ear.

Ghost: "You are not black for your own information."

Kian: "Doesn't matter how you see it."

Ghost: "So tell me about Nono's bunny."

I should have known.

Kian: "Don't worry we are going to her place and you will ask your in-laws about that."

Ghost: "I do not want them to find out."

Kian: "Don't worry we are not in those stages yet."

I laughed

Ghost: "Now you are the one who is taking my place. I will get you."

Kian: "Just saying it as it is."

We laughed and went out. The dads were busy at the kraal. That was the farm life. No need to lazy around because there was always something to do there.

Kian: "Why did you make me sit at the back?"

Ghost had forced me to sit at the back.

Ghost: "You grew up here, you know the place and I don't so I want to look at it properly."

Sam: "What do I get for being a tour guide?"

Ghost: "I will take care of your sister."

Sam: "You will what?"

Ghost: "Never mind."

I just sat there looking at them arguing. I knew that Sam was never going to win but I was enjoying the show. Who wouldn't when given a chance to enjoy a free show? When we arrived Mrs Langa was outside.

Mrs Langa: "My baby."

She kissed me all over and that is what I never missed.

Kian: "Mom, how are you?"

Mrs Langa: "You look well and more than what I expected I am more than glad that you are well."

Sam: "What about your son?"

Ghost: "Jealous are we?"

Mrs Langa: "Who might this be?"

Introductions were made after sometime I showed Ghost around while Sam packed his bag because from the Khumalo residence we were going to hit the road.

When we reached the Khumalo residence Mrs Khumalo was busy in the garden.

Kian: "You never rest."

Mrs Khumalo: "I have to feed those men always; so I cannot rest."

Sam: "You should take a vacation. I was telling mom that you work too much and a holiday won't hurt."

Mrs Khumalo: "Who will take care of these men?"

Sam: "They are old enough to take care of themselves for a few days."

Kian: "Just a few days it won't hurt."

Mrs Khumalo: "We will think about it."

Ghost: "Do not think too long because I know these two will end up using the money."

We laughed

Mrs Khumalo: "You must be Ghost?"

Ghost: "One and only."

We talked about different things when we were about to leave ma said something I had been avoiding or I thought I had avoided.

Mrs Khumalo: "Kian I was not born yesterday. I know a glow when I see one. You are glowing and it is not the fact that you are happy at school but....."

Ghost: "I knew it."

We looked at him then laughed

Sam: "You knew what?"

Ghost: "I am not saying more."

Kian: "You better."

Mrs Khumalo: "You won't even fool me even if you cover for each other. Who is she?"

See what I meant she always found a way to know all about our lives. Sometimes I wondered if she wasn't a prophet in the other life.

Kian: "No need to deny now because you will know sooner but do not tell them."

She knew I was talking about the dads.

Mrs Khumalo: "My mouth is sealed. So when are we meeting her because clearly she makes you happy."

Sam: "Not before we meet her."

Ghost: "I was the first one to meet her."

He was dancing around and I just laughed, Sam was shaking his head.

Mrs Khumalo: "When are you bringing her home?"

Kian: "Soon ma and she will be the last person I will introduce to my family because I do not want to introduce different women. I know she might not be perfect but she is not Fiona and I am willing to give us a chance."

Mrs Khumalo: "I am glad to know that but you heard what I said when you left here. We told you to study hard and do not let girls distract you."

Ghost: "That one will never destruct him. She will be a doctor in two years and she is even beautiful out of his league but I guarantee you she is as real as they come. There is nothing fake about her like the Fiona character."

They laughed and I just looked at them

Mrs Khumalo: "If she is genuine I might reconsider then but make sure that you focus on your school work more than you do on this relationship because we want to see you get out there and make something for yourself."

Kian: "I will make everyone proud I promise."

Ghost: "He has already made me proud."

Sam: "Ssshhhhh ghost we were not talking about you."

Ghost: "Too bad."

Kian: "Okay ma we will inform you when we arrive. Pa said we have to go early."

Mrs Khumalo: "He is right we do not want anything happening to you kids."

Ghost: "At least I am not driving."

Sam: "Lazy bum."

Ghost: "I drove all the way here and I can't drive all the way back."

Mrs Khumalo: "Yes he is right. Leave my boy alone, he is the youngest after all."

Ghost: "Yes tell them mom."

Kian: "Amen."

We laughed as we got to the car. We drove away as Mrs Khumalo waved after us. The dads were still busy so there was no time to chit-chat we said our goodbyes and left.

I drove all the way listening to music because Ghost was sleeping. When I got home I entered first because he was taking out the bags. The moment I opened the door and saw that sight my heart palpated.....

19

It was like I had died and gone to heaven. I looked at Busi and my heart didn't stop beating. The moment she realised I was home she left the pots and ran to me. I just scooped her without delay.

Busi: "Baby, you are here."

Kian: "Yes my love and I missed you."

Busi: "I missed you more."

I enveloped her again in my arms.

Kian: "Well I wouldn't mind to come home to this sight from work every day with the little ones playing."

Busi: "My dream also."

Kian: "Really "

Busi: "Yes, but I am not going to be a stay at home mom."

Kian: "No worries baby you will do whatever you want."

Busi: "Where is....."

Then Ghost entered and whistled

Ghost: "We have to go and pay the bride price for this one sooner than later because we might lose her."

We laughed

Busi: "Hello to you Ghost. I was about to ask about you and you say this. I can't believe I even missed you."

Ghost: "You missed me for real."

Busi: "Yes but not as much as I missed my man."

Ghost: "What's there to miss? He is heartless and his girlfriend was hitting on me."

Busi: "His what?"

She changed her facial expression, Ghost was laughing hard and I was just dumbstruck.

Ghost: "You really love this loser you even have a murderous face on. Sorry honey he has a girlfriend, her name is Betty and she is too fluffy for my liking that is why I would vote for you any other day."

Busi: "What do you mean?"

Ghost: "I am serious because she licked me and I felt like screaming. I will even show you her pictures. She is even beautiful than you."

Busi: "So you even met her."

Ghost: "Why would I miss her when she stays in the farm with the rest of the family?"

Busi: "What?"

Ghost: "Do not worry honey I hate furry creatures I prefer them two legged not four legged.

My eyes were still glued on her face to see her reaction. When it registered what Ghost was talking about I saw her face softening up. She laughed too.

Kian: "So baby you thought I was stringing you alone?"

Busi: "The way he was so serious."

Kian: "I will never do that to you my love. The only person I once dated was Fiona."

Busi: "You almost gave me a heart attack Ghost. You will pay for that."

Ghost: "I wasn't lying because it's his girlfriend and you are the one who jumped into conclusion honey."

We laughed as he took the bags to the bedroom. He came back with his laptop.

Ghost: "You should see the photos I took in the farm. That place is heaven I will go and visit soon."

We laughed

Kian: "When did you take pictures?"

Ghost: "When I was sightseeing. Come honey and see the pics I am transferring them now to my laptop."

Kian: "Busi to you."

Ghost: "Don't be jealous it doesn't suite you."

Busi: "Ghost you are talking to my man. Be respectful."

Ghost: "Love potion."

We laughed at the way he said it.

Kian: "May I please freshen up my love before we eat."

Busi: "No problem. The food is almost ready. Ghost will bath after you."

Ghost: "Who said I want to bath? I did before I came here and haven't you heard about body erosion?"

Kian: "There is no such."

Ghost: "There is and my mom said if you are a man you have to maintain your dignity you have to keep smelling like a man. If you bath too many times you will end up smelling like a woman with perfumes and make up and all those things."

We laughed

Busi: "I do not even put on make-up and all that."

Ghost: "You might as well be a man. Wait a minute I saw you with make-up on don't lie. I know you do put it from time to time."

Busi: "Are you sure that you are okay?"

Ghost: "Never been this fine for as long as I could remember."

We laughed and I left them to their pictures. When I was done I found them setting the table. I became hungry instantly.

Kian: "Smells divine in here."

Ghost: "We know how to cook."

Kian: "When did you cook?"

Ghost: "I am setting the table here."

We laughed.

Kian: "Okay thank you Thuto for the meal."

Busi: "It's funny when you say his name because to me he will always be ghost."

Ghost: "I am getting used to it. Listen my mom will come and pick me up in an hour's time. We have to be in North West in the morning my granny or great-granny is not okay."

Busi: "Which one is which?"

Ghost: "All I know is I will be stuck with my mom and dad the whole drive and tomorrow."

Kian: "Sorry. You are now a tourist do you realise that from Mooi River to North West."

Ghost: "When I come back I will apply for the position of the Minister of Tourism."

Busi: "You are worse."

We laughed and ate while having light conversation. His mother came just as soon as we finished eating.

Thuto.mom: "At least you are eating healthy food."

We laughed

Ghost: "Mom I always tell you that we are not kids."

Thuto.mom: "You will always be kids to me and Kian I hear you have a girlfriend now so if you dare chase after skirts and leave school I will pull those ears."

Kian: "Ghost!!"

Busi had gone to the bathroom.

Ghost: "Mom I told you that in confidence."

Thuto.mom: "You are still my kids. Come on let's go before your father comes rushing in."

Ghost: "You came with dad?"

Thuto.mom: "He is my husband and your father."

Ghost: "You need to give each other space for just a day."

Thuto.mom: "I am away now and he has his own space so why are you complaining. "

Ghost: "Let's go then."

Thuto.mom: "Bye my baby."

Me: "Bye ma."

They left and Busi came out from the bathroom.

Kian: "So you were hiding?"

Busi: "I heard what she was saying."

Kian: "She was just kidding. Come here." I took her to my arms and kissed her.

Kian: "Baby I will be lonely here this weekend."

Busi: "Do not worry I will come tomorrow morning so that we go and look for the flat."

Kian: "Are you not going to church?"

Busi: "I was hoping not to."

Kian: "I do not want to fight with Uncle Kay. You know what, why don't you spent a night here and on Sunday we will go flat hunting."

Busi: "I don't know if my parents will agree."

Kian: "Please honey. I promise I will be a gentleman."

Busi: "You know we can't do anything right."

Kian: "I am not planning to do anything love I just want you in my arms only. I do not love you for intimacy only I love the whole of you."

Busi: "I am tempted."

Kian: "But...."

Busi: "No buts my love. I trust you; I trust that you will keep your promise. I have been dreaming of that

Advertisement

waking next to you in the morning and cuddle with you."

Kian: "You have?"

Busi: "Yes, Kian I love you and you have become the centre of my life so I do dream about these things and I see a future for us. Please do not hurt me."

My heart was beating fast. I wanted to come clean about Fiona and the chipmunks but my voice was stuck she just hugged me and she was home in my arms that was where she belonged.

Busi: "Let me try talking to my parents."

Kian: "Okay."

It came as a whisper because I still had a shaky voice. She talked on the phone for a while and then she gave me her phone.

Busi: "Uncle Kay wants to talk to you."

I shook my head but her eyes were pleading I had to take it.

Kian: "Hello."

Uncle Kay: "Kian, how did you travel?" I told him how we travelled but I left some personal details. "So why would you want my daughter to sleep at your place."

Kian: "She wanted to. I will never disrespect you or her. I will never do anything."

Uncle Kay: "I didn't say that you will do anything I was just asking because you can only share the bed when you are married."

Kian: "I know sir I was not trying to disrespect you."

Uncle Kay: "This is a once off arrangement. You are coming with her tomorrow so that we sit down and set some ground rules."

Kian: "Yes sir, I understand."

Uncle Kay: "Now give my daughter the phone my wife wants to talk to her."

Kian: "Okay, thank you sir."

Uncle Kay: "Do not thank me as yet because I can still break your knee cap."

I gave Busi the phone as I was smiling from ear to ear.

Busi: "Thank you Uncle Kay. Yes I love you so much."

She looked at me smiling.

Kian: "He said yes."

Busi: "Yep."

Kian: "Come here."

I took her into my arms and kissed her passionately. For the first time I let my hands wonder and they landed under her shirt. It was a bare skin and I froze from excitement.

Busi: "Help me wash dishes then so that after this we will go and buy toiletries. I don't have any remember."

Kian: "Ah.....Ah....."

Words had just escaped me.

Busi: "Baby."

Kian: "Right, but I do have new towels and a tooth-bush. You will use my gel and lotion."

Busi: "I will smell like a man."

We both laughed

Kian: "Do not even go all Ghost on me my love."

Busi: "I won't. Help me with the dishes then I will go bath."

Kian: "I am washing your back."

Busi: "Who said it's dirty?"

Kian: "I know it is because you have tiny hands and they don't reach all areas at the back."

She laughed

Busi: "If you say so."

We washed the dishes and cleaned the kitchen playing. I had never been that happy and content for ages. Ghost kept me on my toes and happy but it was a different happiness. We went to the bedroom so that she can go for her bath. When she stripped in front of me I was left speechless. She had a beautiful body I just took her into my arms.

Kian: "You have a beautiful body my love."

Busi: "Thank you very much. It is now yours to love and cherish."

I was so excited I was even sweating in the wrong places.

Kian: "Thank you."

We took a bath together and she was comfortable for her first time with a man. She was comfortable with me. I gave her my t-

shirt to sleep on. She insisted we prayed before we slept. I had last prayed when I was in high school. I just looked at her and fell deeply in love. We retired for the night. She fitted perfectly in my arms, that's where she belonged and I couldn't have asked for more because I was in love and so much content.....

20

“Morning my love.”

I tried to make out of my surrounding and it registered that I was with the love of my life. I just smiled and opened my eyes.

Kian: “Hay baby, where are you going this early?”

Busi: “I have to go home and prepare for church remember.”

Kian: “I wish I could pause the time.”

Busi: “Me too but hay it is what it is.”

Kian: “Okay give your man some sugar.”

Busi: “I have the morning breath so no can do.”

Kian: “But you are talking so the breath is gone.”

Busi: “Don’t try to be smart Mr Smarty pants.”

We both laughed.

Kian: “Who are calling smarty pants?”

I tickled her she was laughing and her laughter was like music to my ears. She managed to get away running I followed her she was running to the bathroom. I caught up with her when she was about to close the door on me.

Busi: “Sorry my love, you are not Mr S but Mr S in small letters.”

Kian: "What does that mean?"

Busi: "sweetheart"

Kian: "That's my girl. Now daddy needs some sugar." I didn't wait for her response I pinned her against the sink and gave her a passionate kiss. "Get used to that because when we are married there won't be any brushing of teeth in the morning before I get my sugar."

She giggled

Busi: "You will die of bad breath."

Kian: "At least I will know that I died because of love."

Busi: "You are not okay."

Kian: "I am so not okay I am madly in love with my woman and I feel like shouting to the world."

Busi: "Thank you."

Kian: "I wasn't talking about you. I was talking about my woman."

Busi: "I am not your friend anymore."

Kian: "Come here my love. I am just pulling your leg. You are my only woman."

I kissed her again. We took a bath together and I was calling all the atomies of my body to behave because I was really tempted

but I respected her. I also needed my knee caps so I was not going to let Uncle Kay destroy them.

Kian: "I wish I can just close the world outside and be with you forever."

Busi: "My wish too, my love, but we have to go now."

Kian: "Okay. I miss you already."

She laughed

Busi: "When I am still here in front of you."

Kian: "You are leaving already and I will be alone."

I sulked, I was not pretending I really wanted to spend a day with her but I knew I was going to be unfair to her and her parents were going to murder me in the process.

Busi: "Let me kiss you better so that when you feel lonely you just touch your lips."

Kian: "Yes."

I said it with so much enthusiasm that she even laughed at me.

Busi: "Sorry my love. I will miss you too if it's any consolation."

Kian: "Come here." I hugged her tight then let go. She tip-toed and kissed me I responded after a little while I pulled back and took her hand as we went out to the parking lot. "Let me put

back ghost's car because I do not want someone bumping into it."

He had parked at an inconvenient place so when Busi drove out I parked nicely and left. I was the one driving because I felt like as a man I was supposed to do the honours always.

Kian: "I am nervous the way your dad was so serious yesterday."

Busi: "Do not worry he will only give you a few slaps for making me sleep with a man for the first time in my life.

Kian: "If that was meant to scare me you have succeeded my love."

She laughed hard.

Busi: "You will have to take it like a man, my man because I wouldn't want it any other way."

Kian: "I will get you."

Busi: "I am not even joking, my love."

I didn't know what to make of the statement. When we got home they were all ready to go to church.

Mom: "Busi

Advertisement

you are late for Sabbath school and if you think just because you are now dating and fornicating you can get away with murder then you are wrong.”

She was not angry but she was not joking either.

Busi: “I was not fornicating mom.”

Her siblings laughed.

Mom: “Go and wait in the cars you three. Brandon you are using crushes today because the chair is now making you lazy.”

Bran: “Mommy.”

Beli: “How are we going to sing mom.”

Mom: “He will be sitting on the piano its one and the same thing.”

Bran: “Okay mommy. Busi you will pay for this.”

Busi was not herself anymore and I panicked too. Kay came and asked us to sit down because the young ones had gone.

Kay: “Busi, I love you my daughter and I let you do anything you want but I do not approve what you did yesterday. I didn’t want to seem like a controlling father because you have never given us reasons not to trust you.”

Busi: “Sorry Uncle Kay.”

Mom: "My baby, I know you love this boy but you know the Sabbath started at 6 last night and you were supposed to know that we keep it Holy."

Busi: "I am sorry to disrespect you and God it was never my intension. I love Kian mom and dad with all I got I know we are all humans and make mistakes. I promise we didn't do anything mom. He was a gentleman. I just wanted to spend time with him."

Uncle Kay: "Kian, you have to make your intensions clear."

I was shaking because those two were serious and if stares could kill I was going to be dead at the scene. I didn't know how to react.

Kian: "I.....I am still doing my first year and I....."

Uncle Kay: "So what does that have to do with your intensions?"

I had to be convincing because if I was given money and a choice I was going to choose Busi and marry her the same day.

Kian: "I love Busi and I see us growing old together and having a bunch of kids. She wants five so I would give her and we will have grand kids. My problem is I am broke I do not even have anything in my name, well I do have about eight thousand that I saved if that will make you better."

They all bust out with laughter. I swear I wasn't trying to pull a ghost on them but desperate situations calls for desperate measures. Kay just shook him head.

Uncle Kay: "Your honest sometimes is out of this world."

Kian: "I am trying to say I need money to pay for the bride price I will also need the money to give her the wedding that she wants and deserves. So when I have a few cents to spare I made sure I put them in my savings."

Mom: "I love your thinking you are thinking ahead."

Kian: "Yes ma'am. The moment I saw your daughter I saw a future and I was groomed like that. My dads taught us never to take lightly on what we are doing. I always take my life serious and whatever I do I make sure I try not to hurt the next person. I would like to marry your daughter and I would like to work on it I do not want any handouts because I need to make sure I am the man that she will depend on whenever there will be times where we would be in need. If ever we would encounter such problems I can easily tattle them."

Uncle Kay: "Spoken like a true man. Now coming to my point; you know that you were not supposed to do what you did yesterday? You cannot allow temptations so I want you to be careful. You are both adults but make sure you don't jeopardise the chances that you are given. The important thing is your

studies. Kian you will never be the man you want to be once you don't finish your studies. Then how will you take care of your wife and five kids? So for now please make sure your relationship does not affect your studies."

Busi: "Yes daddy. I am so sorry I acted on impulse and it will not happen again."

Mom: "We do not mind about sleepovers as long as it doesn't happen on a Sabbath. I trust you because I have trusted you since you were young. The only thing I need is to tell us on time when you are sleeping over."

Busi: "Yes mommy I will never do it again."

Uncle Kay: "We are late for church Busisiwe."

Busi: "Yes daddy."

She said rushing upstairs to her room and I was left with those two.

Uncle Kay: "I trust you with my daughter and I do not want to fight with you so please take care of her."

Kian: "I promise I will."

After sometime she came down looking like an angel and I fell in love with her all over again. If she wasn't mine I was going to go after her right there.

Mom: "Stop drooling she is yours already."

They laughed at me.

Busi: "Mom, leave my man alone."

Uncle Kay: "Mmmmmm."

Busi: "Dad."

Uncle Kay: "I said nothing. You will find us in the car."

They left us standing there.

Kian: "You know that you are beautiful right." She nodded.

"Today you are looking extra beautiful my love. I feel unworthy of you."

Busi: "I am yours do not doubt yourself. Let's go before dad comes and drag me from here. You will take the car I will collect it after church hopefully they will allow me to sleep over."

Kian: "Mmmmmm, I can't wait."

We laughed and she locked the house.

Uncle Kay: "Kian that's my daughter's car."

Kian: "What is hers is mine."

They laughed

Mom: "Tell him honey."

Uncle Kay: "You are walking to church."

Mom: "In your dreams. Let us go."

I drove off first and they drove after me but we parted ways because I was driving to a different direction. When I got home I slept a little and woke up to study. I was going to make sure I pass no matter what.

Surprisingly her parents dropped her later on with her overnight bag. I hugged her and buried my face on her hair and it smelt good.

Kian: "You came."

Busi: "Yes, why are you so surprised?"

Kian: "Your parents were breathing fire in the morning."

Busi: "I convinced them. I told them that you are a perfect gentleman so let's not give them the reasons to doubt me and your intensions."

I was really a lucky guy. I was going to make sure they do not regret trusting me.

Kian: "Thank you very much."

Busi: "What did you cook I am starving?"

Kian: "I was busy with my books my love so I didn't have time. Don't worry I will make something quickly."

Busi: "Let's make it together."

Kian: "Good idea."

We cooked together and it was as if we have known each other all our lives. We spent the rest of the evening watching movies and chatting in between movies. There was so much to learn about each other but all in all I realised that she was just a simple girl but deeply broken. We were so much happy that I didn't even want to open her wounds. I was going to let her be up until she was comfortable in telling me everything.

Ghost came the following morning dog tired so we had to let him rest. He asked us to wait for him because he wanted an input on our decision. We ended up calling the agents and they gave us three possible places and it was easy because all three of them were in close proximity.

We got a good flat for a reasonable price to my surprise ghost's parents took care of the rent for part of the year and the following year. All in all they had paid for six months. I was done complaining because they said it was their thank you for keeping an eye on their vulnerable baby. I laughed to myself thinking I was the one vulnerable to Ghost because he always verbally attacked me.

The year ended on a good note I was reluctant to go home because of so many reasons but the one at the top was that I

was going to be far away from Busi. Our results were going to come second week of December so I didn't wait for them I left with a heavy heart. Being at home was refreshing I was happy until the following day after I have just arrived I opened the door to my worst mistake ever.....

21

“Kee, how are you doing?”

Please God take me now. I was praying inwardly, what have I done to deserve such people in my life.

Kian: “It’s Kian and what are you doing here?”

Fiona: “I came with my mother.”

Kian: “You what?”

I was really surprised the same mother who supported her to dump me and move on to a much better person.

Fiona: “Mom said she will drive me I just wanted to see you.”

Kian: “Why are you here?”

Fiona: “Kee please.....”

Kian: “Kian please that name left a sour taste in my mouth.”

Fiona: “Sorry.”

Kian: “I do not need your sorries please leave me alone. Haven’t you humiliated me enough in front of my family and now you want to humiliate me further.”

Fiona: “I am not going to do such.”

Kian: “I was there when you humiliated me Fiona. I begged you; cried and even had mucus running in my nose. Do you know

what that does to a man's ego? I do not want that humiliation again.

Fiona: "I do not want to humiliate you please listen to me."

Kian: "I do not have time for this."

I knew my dad was going to become soft for this. He was like that so I called baba while she was still standing there. He answered just after a few rings. That is what I loved about him because his phone was always in his chest. He had a sling phone bag which hung from his neck. We used to laugh at him but it helped because we could reach him easily unlike others.

Kian: "Baba I need you."

He knew the sound of my voice when I was in distress so he didn't even ask me why or when.

Baba: "Coming."

Kian: "You can go and sit with your mom outside I am busy here."

I was not even doing anything in particular. I was just dismissing her.

Pa: "Seun how is the dog h....." He also trailed when he saw Fiona and when he saw my facial expression he got back to her. "What is going on here?"

Before anyone could answer baba came rushing.

Baba: "Let's go inside. You are coming too."

He was shouting at Fiona's mother who was standing outside her car. We got inside and pa drew the chairs from the dining room he didn't even want us to proceed to the sitting room.

Baba: "What is going on here?"

Fiona mom: "You don't even greet, we are not here for you."

It was like she entered the bulls' kraal pa and baba stood up at once.

Pa: "What? Who are you to talk to Mdue like this what do you want in my yard?"

Fiona: "Ma, please."

Fiona mom: "I didn't come for this here."

Baba: "You are free to go then."

Fiona: "Ma, I came here to talk and you are ruining things."

Kian: "What do you want to talk about because I do not want to talk to you I told you while we were still in Johannesburg that I was fine with you looking down upon me and a nobody to you."

Fiona: "I am sorry....."

Baba: "Little girl can you hear what he is saying?"

Fiona: "Yes I just want him to hear me out."

Kian: "My life was very simple and uncomplicated and now you want to complicate it."

Pa: "Didn't you humiliate my son enough?"

My family were the ones that picked up the broken pieces and they were there when I was down.

Baba: "So if we let you talk to him will you leave him alone?"

Kian: "Baba I....."

Baba: "Wait a little my son." Fiona's mom just rolled her eyes and baba looked at her with murderous eyes. If eyes could kill we were going to bury her the same day. "I am talking to you little girl."

The way he was saying it, was surely to make her feel small.

Fiona: "Yes I promise."

Baba: "Good, now Kian, hear what she wants I give her only five minute and....."

Pa: "Then she is out of the compound before I murder someone."

Baba and pa looked at each other and laughed

Pa: "Go and wait in the car."

He was instructing Fiona's mom. They stood up with baba.

Baba: "We are not going far because we do not trust you with our son. We will be in the sitting room."

Kian: "So what is it that you want from me Fiona?"

I asked becoming irritated.

Fiona: "Listen I am so sorry about my weakness which led us to this point."

Kian: "May we please move on from the sorry part."

She looked down defeated but I wasn't going to entertain her no matter what.

Fiona: "I want to make things right between us because I know you have moved on. I was weak to resist and now I am in too deep I do not know how to get out. Mike was a good guy at first but now he has turned to an unknown beast. He is abusive

Advertisement

verbally, emotionally and physically. His sister is also putting pressure on me I truly want out but I do not know how to do it."

If she expected me to feel sorry for her then she had another thing coming. I was not even feeling sorry for her. I was in her shoes begging her to give me a chance but did she listen, no,

what Fiona wanted Fiona got. I dusted myself up and moved on.

Kian: "Why don't you just move on?"

Fiona: "I tried so many times but I failed."

Kian: "Fiona no one is God so if you want to leave they can't stop you. If you really want to leave you can leave. You chose this life no one held a gun to your head so if you are tired just leave. As for me I forgave you a long time ago and I have moved on. All I am asking for is to be left alone because I went for one thing at that place that is to get my qualifications and move on. Busi is just a bonus that I would like to keep closer to me because I will never find a woman like her. So I told you I forgave you then it's time we moved on."

Fiona: "I am sorry again. I hear you, I won't disturb you all I am asking for is for us to be civil towards each other that's all."

Kian: "I can deal with that. As long as we won't step on each other's toes and we are not buddies so we only talk when it's necessary. Tell your friends to stay away from me."

Fiona: "I can deal with that. So tell me why do you say we are the chipmunks?"

I laughed inwardly.

Kian: "I just didn't want to know their names so you are Alvin and they are the chipmunks." She laughed I just faked a smile. "If there is nothing more left then I would like to go back to my tasks."

Fiona: "Okay Thank you for your time."

Kian: "You are welcome."

I let her go alone outside. She knew the door so what was the use for me to take her there.

Baba: "Are you done?"

I was sitting next to him while pa was busy trying to search for TV signal. Jah that was the way of life in the Bundus we were used to it.

Kian: "I am done I hope she will be out of my hair. I need to go and see ma. I need all the negative auras out of my way before I go back to my studies."

Baba: "I am proud of you and I know you will make us proud."

Kian: "I always finish what I start the way you taught me."

Pa: "That's my boy."

We spoke about my school work and I told them about the move and the fact that when the funders gave me the rent money that we initially paid when I started staying in the flat I

never touched it so I was saving it. They were happy and I told them about Ghost's family paying for six month. Pa and baba called immediately to thank them. They were grateful that my parents thanked them personally.

It was December holidays so the rest of the family was coming and it was a ploughing season so it was always hectic but I never failed to find time for my queen. She would even call me in the odd hours of the night and I would never fail to answer her. If I didn't know better I would have thought that she was checking if I was not cheating on her.

Kian: "Baby you know that I was tired and you wake me up in the middle of the night. I am not cheating you know."

She giggled

Busi: "I know I was just missing you I couldn't sleep."

Kian: "What else do you miss?"

Busi: "Your arms, your kiss, your....."

Kian: "You will make me drive there now."

She giggled again.

Busi: "Don't even think about it."

Kian: “Why not because I miss those lips and I do not even want to think about what hands will be doing while I am kissing those wonderful lips.”

Busi: “Okay you are torturing me now. I was calling because I wanted to inform you to check your results online.”

Kian: “I am panicking now.”

Busi: “Come on baby. You know how hard you worked and I am very proud of you all the way.”

Kian: “Thank you my love for your support.”

We spoke about different things. I dropped the call when I heard her snoring and I just wished she was in my arms. I was awakened by Sam calling me.

Sam: “Wake up we are all waiting here for the result.”

Kian: “What?!!”

Sam: “Wake up man we even bought breakfast for everyone.”

I jumped out of bed and ran into the bathroom. After I was done with my business and my morning hygiene I went to the sitting room and to my surprise everyone was really waiting for me.

Kian: “Morning.”

Sam: “You had to keep old people waiting.”

Kian: "Sorry."

I didn't want to say much because I was panicking. It was a norm in the farm to wait for the results for everyone. I was once an observer too when I was still at home.

I punched in my student number and identity number after that I just herded to the kitchen because I didn't want to faint. When I was about to open the fridge I heard Nono scream.

Nono: "All these distinctions I am so jealous, tata can I go back to school?"

I just laughed and took out my phone and called Busi to inform her about my results. She was happy although I just said I passed because I didn't actually see them. I didn't want to stay long on the phone.

Pa: "You really made me proud."

He said when I got back. The rest of the family were over the moon. We celebrated the whole day. We went out food paid by guys who were working of course some of us contributed our stomachs. When we came back home ghost sent his results and he had gotten distinctions in all the modules I was dumbstruck. How did he do it? I was happy for him I called him immediately.

Kian: "Are you sure that you didn't see the papers before they were written."

Ghost: "Hello to you too farm boy."

I laughed

Kian: "I knew you will have something to say. Well how do you do it if I may ask?"

Ghost: "Do what?"

Kian: "Get distinctions in all modules like that."

Ghost: "Oh that? I think I copied the answers from a cook book or something."

I laughed hard

Kian: "I missed you."

Ghost: "I don't miss you that much I only miss your farm boy tendencies."

Kian: "You will pay for that."

Ghost: "I want to come and visit over the weekend before we fly to Scotland. So make sure you send your girlfriend Betty on a vacation too and cook a duck for me, the small one not big one."

I was cracking my ribs with laughter.

Kian: "Are you seriously commanding me?"

Ghost: "Okay I got to run busy man here."

Just like that he had dropped the call on me. I was left speechless and smiling to myself. I was the one who called to congratulate him but he ended up dominating and dropped before I could say what I wanted to say. In true sense I missed him badly I was looking forward to the weekend.

Kian: "Pa I want to go and see her today."

He knew I was talking about my ma.

Pa: "Are you ready."

Kian: "I will never be ready."

Pa: "Okay, whatever you want."

I drove to their farm which was a little far. I was agitated and I was sweating. When I got there I knocked when the door opened.....

What the.....

She just slammed the door to my face my own mother. Why did I come here in the first place I was asking myself? Where was my ouma? I couldn't even get answers because she had slammed the door to my face.

I turned to walk away when ouma called me.

Ouma: "Kian, when did you come here? Why are you leaving without seeing me?"

I had tears stinging my eyes.

Kian: "I came to see ma but she slammed the door to my face."

Ouma: "What?"

Kian: "It's okay Ouma; maybe she doesn't want to be reminded of her past."

Ouma: "Come in. This is my house; if she doesn't want to talk to you then she will have to listen to you at least."

I respected my Ouma so I was going to listen to her.

Kian: "Okay but I will not be staying long."

Ouma: "I am so sorry about your mother's behaviour. Of all my kids I do not know she took after whom because her pa, your Oupa was not like that."

Kian: "It's okay Ouma I will never try to understand her because if it is the way it's going to be then I will accept it."

I was really willing to move on without a guilty conscious. We got inside and she was sitting in the lounge.

Ouma: "Why did you close the door to your son's face?"

Ma: "....."

Ouma: "I am talking to you. This is my house and you will not do that to my visitors."

She mumbled something but I was not even interested she was not even sorry for leaving me. There and then I decided to forgive her for my sanity and move on. I didn't need her I have never needed her in my life come to think of it. Mrs Khumalo and Mrs Langa had been more than mothers to me.

Kian: "Ouma, its fine I will say what I came here to say and leave. When I want to visit you I will call first next time."

She seemed hurt but it was beyond my control because I loved Ouma so I was not going to punish her for my mother's sins.

Ouma: "Sit."

Kian: "Thank you. Ma even if you do not want to talk to me it's fine I will say what I came here to say and leave you alone." She just stared at me with no emotions at all. I just continued. "I love you; you are my mother that will never change. I came

here for answers but it is clear that it will never happen so I might as well say my mind and move on. I want to tell you that I forgive you. For all the wrongs you have done and are about to do. I was never angry at you because you had your reasons and who am I to question them or you?

I never came short of mother's love because I had Ouma, Mrs Khumalo and Mrs Langa to take care of me. I know you might have tried to be a good mother because if you were not a good mother you would have aborted me or left me in the dumpster. I am a man now I would have loved to share all the little things I am experiencing in my life but all is well because I now know where we stand in the hierarchy of life.

I met someone she is good and she is every man's dream and fantasy. She chose me, a poor motherless boy. I forgive you because I want to propose to her. Even if we have not spent so many years together I feel like I have known her all my life. So if I forgive you I will have a light heart and love her right."

I was telling the truth. My holidays in the farm made me realise that I wanted to spend the rest of my life with her. You might think that I was moving too fast we needed to know each other first. Right now if you know your partners, parents or siblings 100% then I might believe you. We never learn to know someone fully so I was going to spend the rest of my life learning about her.

Ouma: "You have?"

She was smiling from ear to ear.

Kian: "Yes and I know you will love her too."

Ouma: "I can't wait to meet her."

Kian: "Soon, very soon but please do not tell pa because I am still looking for ways to tell him."

We both laughed.

Ouma: "You know your pa and Khumalo they will belt you."

Kian: "They will even drive to school drunk."

Ouma: "I understand but they are right because they want you to finish school first."

Kian: "I will finish school dark or blue Ouma."

We laughed again

Ouma: "You do that."

I looked at ma and she had tears threatening to come but she remained unmoved. I was done and I was moving on with my life. It was up to her to choose whether she wanted to be part of it or not.

Kian: "Ouma; I will come soon to fix your fence with the boys. You know when we are here we work faster together."

Ouma: "Yes please. I do not have enough money I would have asked Melusi to help me."

Melusi was a handy man who used to fixed things in most of the farms around. He was good at his job but he charged too much. It was worth it because once he fixed it would be durable.

Kian: "We will try to fix it well do not worry."

She was happy. I said my goodbyes and left, somehow I felt better because I knew that I will never have a biological mother no matter what. I passed home and drove to the Langa residence.

Sam: "Why do you look down?"

Kian: "Hello to you too."

We both laughed.

Sam: "Hello Kian. Why are you so down?" I told him what went on. "Sorry man. Do not beat yourself up at least you tried."

Kian: "I know but I feel light now. I don't even feel the edge to ask her why she left. I think I have made peace with it now."

Sam: "Yes

Advertisement

men or let me say male species do that they don't ponder on the unknown just concentrate on school and your woman. Make sure you keep her happy so that she won't leave too. Don't get me wrong I am not saying that pa made her leave but I know Busi she is the opposite of your mom and she will never leave you because of money but when you mess up she will leave you."

Kian: "Yes I get it. I will never intentionally hurt her."

Sam: "That's all I want to hear."

Kian: "The reason I am here is that Ouma needs her fence fixed and you know how expensive Melusi is and how stingy Ouma is?"

We both laughed because Ouma had money but for it to leave her wallet or bank account it was an effort.

Sam: "I have the whole day tomorrow to lazy around; I will ask Junior if he is not busy."

Kian: "I hope he is not but what I know is that he is agitated because his fiancée is coming and the parents do not know that she is a fiancée already."

Sam: "I feel sorry for him and these old people will be drunk it's festive season. When they are drunk they speak their minds."

Kian: "He will be fine they are in a good mood these days."

Sam: "If you say so. I am happy for Junior though, I wish I could find someone too so that I won't be lonely."

Kian: "You are choosy."

Sam: "Not at all this is the whole life I am talking about, my whole life. Look at mom and dad, I want what they have. They fight sometimes I know that but it doesn't take too much time for them to make up."

Kian: "Yes you will get her one day."

Sam: "Let me finish here I am cooking tonight."

Kian: "Good for you. Let me go because I am always on cooking duty as I am alone. Pa cooks when he is happy."

Sam: "See you tomorrow then."

We said our goodbyes and I drove home. When I told pa what went on he was hurt more than angry but we decided to put it behind us and move on. I was happy that my pa allowed us to move on. We ate dinner very early so when it was around six I was really missing my woman. I told dad I was going to the Langa residence and I drove to Johannesburg.

Sam: "I will cover for you don't worry. Please drive safely."

I had called Sambulo on my way to Johannesburg.

Kian: "I miss her too much man I do not want to go to the next year without seeing her for the last time."

Sam: "I understand. Please come back in one piece."

Kian: "I will try. I will call you when I get back."

Sam: "I can't believe you would go all the way for just a kiss."

I laughed, he sounded funny but I really wanted to see her and kiss her for the last time before the coming year. I wasn't crazy I was in love.

Kian: "I am in love man."

Sam: "That's craziness."

Kian: "Tell me that when you find the one you can't live without."

Sam: "If you say so. Drive safely man."

I dropped the call and stepped on the accelerator. I passed by the garage to refuel because pa knew his cars so he monitored fuel.

After a few hours I was in Johannesburg parked outside her home. I called her and she immediately answered.

Busi: "Hello."

Kian: "I am outside my love please come out."

Busi: "What?"

Kian: "I am serious I came for my goodnight kiss."

Busi: "Do not raise my hopes up baby I won't like it."

Kian: "Have I ever lied to you?"

Busi: "Oh my God."

Then she screamed and I just laughed. It was worth it I was glad I drove all the way to see her. After a few minutes she came out wearing a gown looking all cute.

Busi: "Baby, you are crazy do you know that?"

Kian: "You are right baby I am crazy about you."

She laughed as I scooped her and swung her. When I put her down I attacked her with a passionate kiss. I wanted to devour her.

Busi: "I love you do you know that?"

Kian: "I love you more."

I took her into my arms again and kissed the lights out of her. I couldn't get enough of her no matter what.

Busi: "I can't believe that you are here."

Kian: "I am here love and I would love to keep you happy all the times. I wish I had more."

Busi: “Little is much when you are in love. Look at you driving all the way to kiss me goodnight. This is out of this world. I wouldn’t have asked for more.”

Kian: “I want to keep you happy always.”

I heard someone clear their throat and I panicked. Busi just giggled.

Busi: “Uncle Kay, mom.”

Oh snap.

Mom: “Kian, what are you doing here.”

Kian: “Evening ma’am. I came to say goodnight to your daughter.”

Uncle Kay: “Weren’t you at the farm for the school holidays?”

Busi: “He was dad he came to say goodnight.”

Mom: “This is awesome.”

Uncle Kay: “So you drove all the way from the farm just to say goodnight?”

Busi: “Daddy!!!”

Uncle Kay: “I was trying to make sense of this.”

I looked down.

Kian: “Yes.”

Kay: "You are as crazy as they come."

Mom: "That is romantic baby. This is really awesome."

She was smiling from ear to ear.

Kian: "I would have loved to chat but I have a long drive back."

Uncle Kay: "You are really serious?"

Kian: "Yes sir."

He laughed hard.

Uncle Kay: "I might have underestimated you. Let us go honey and leave them to their goodbyes. Next time respect my house."

It was funny how he changed from being a laughing being to a serious faced being.

Kian: "Yes sir." They left and Busi laughed hard. "I will kick you."

Busi: "You should have seen your face. Why are you scared of Uncle Kay?"

Kian: "Baby, your dad is very scary I do not even want to be on his bad side."

We laughed

Busi: "Chicken."

Kian: "Who is the chicken?"

I tickled her she tried running but I pinned her to the car after catching up with her.

Kian: "I love you very much baby but I have to go."

She tried to protest but I pointed out that I was driving back and I didn't want any trouble at home.

Busi: "Thank you for coming. I love you."

Kian: "I love you more."

We kissed one last time and I drove home. I wasn't flying the way I was when I drove to Johannesburg. I got home in the early hours but pa was still sleeping I had to catch some sleep too. I smiled to myself thinking about how crazy love can make you.....

23

We had a fun filled and happy festive. Ghost came to visit as promised and we had bliss of a weekend.

Ghost: "So where is Betty?"

Kian: "You asked me to take her on a vacation and I did just that."

Ghost: "You seriously love you girlfriend."

Kian: "Are you seriously going to talk about Betty the whole weekend?"

Ghost: "Never, I am glad she is not around because I am planning on enjoying my stay here."

Pa: "You will enjoy then."

Ghost: "So old man, are you going to let me work in the fields too."

I laughed hard my dad just shook his head.

Pa: "You will go with us today."

Ghost: "People like me do not do hard physical labour if you know what I mean."

Kian: "No we don't."

He was physically fit because who can tell me about a rugby player who is not physically fit. He was being lazy but unfortunately he came at a wrong time. The planting season was always the busiest in the farm.

Pa: "You are physically fit my boy."

Ghost: "You don't understand. I am not programmed for this."

Kian: "Don't even go ghost on me." He laughed

Ghost: "You know what, never mind you will never understand me anyway."

Kian: "No one understands you better than me."

Ghost: "Okay if I work with you guys what is in for me?"

Kian: "What do you want ghost?"

Ghost: "A date with Nono."

Pa: "Not happening, I will murder you myself."

Ghost had guts, how could he say it in front of pa. I just laughed.

Ghost: "It's a fare deal and you haven't heard what I wanted for the date."

Pa: "I will murder you then ask questions later."

Ghost: "Then I will tell you anyway."

Kian: "I want to hear this one."

Ghost: "Kian promised to take me to see Nono's bunny but failed so now I am going to ask Nono on a date to take me to her friend."

I couldn't hold my amusement and laughter.

Pa: "You are a lost child."

Ghost: "You see, and then Nono will restore me."

Pa left in surrender. I just laughed at ghost. He was really a lost soul.

Kian: "You can get away with murder."

Ghost: "A rare skill I tell you."

Kian: "So you will really ask her on a date to see the bunny?"

Ghost: "I won't tell you my secrets and details. What I want to tell you is I am happy to be in this farm."

Kian: "I give up."

Ghost: "Not so fast you have to convince Nono then"

Kian: "No ghost you will have to go yourself."

Ghost: "Traitor."

Kian: "How am I a traitor?"

Ghost: "You are betraying brotherhood."

I laughed at him and let him be. All in all we enjoyed the weekend with everyone sucking up to him. In fact they were hooked to his web. I loved it because he was a good kid.

Surprisingly the dads loved Junior's fiancée. He even proposed properly in front of the family which was so sweet because the whole family loved it and the fiancée was shy but happy.

Mr Khumalo: "You should have asked me

Advertisement

your father how to do these things. You don't go on your knees in front of the woman."

Mrs Khumalo: "What are you saying baba."

Mr Khumalo: "I.....youknow....."

Sam: "I have never seen baba this speechless before." We all laughed

Kian: "Women power."

The women clapped and I laughed.

Mr Langa: "You were supposed to pay the bride price only and tell her you are now my wife. Now look at you being a softy."

We laughed again

Junior: "You tell us, how did you propose?"

Pa: "We never had such things before if you loved somebody they had to know."

Mrs Langa: "Do not listen to them my babies you will be lonely forever. Obviously there were not fancy proposals but there was a proposal fit for that time so what you did Junior is good it will pave way to some people."

Nono: "I can't wait to see who is going to be next."

Mr Langa: "Not you I guess because I will buy a much bigger gun."

Nono: "Dad!!"

Mr Khumalo: "He is right my Nono no man will come to this compound for any of our girls."

Nono: "Not fair."

Kian: "Thank God I am not a girl."

Pa: "Not so fast young man. You are still at school so no girls."

Nono: "Oh oh"

Mr Langa: "What was that?"

Junior: "Nothing tata she is being dramatic."

Mr Khumalo: "I hope so."

Mrs Langa: "Leave the kids alone."

She knew about Busi so that was her way of stopping them from interrogating because the truth was going to come out. I didn't want it to come out that way.

Sam: "Baba may we please go to Durban as kids tomorrow we will come the day after tomorrow."

Pa: "I hope there won't be drinking and inviting girls."

Junior: "Your daughters and daughter in law will be there so they will tell you if we misbehave."

Tata: "As if they will tell the truth." We laughed

Baba: "I trust you will behave."

Kian: "Most definitely."

We laughed but they allowed us to take a vacation because it was well deserved. That particular year the farm was a mess when we got home from our respective places. So we had worked tirelessly and it was time we rested for a day.

Kian: "I can't believe you booked a room for me with Sam. I was hoping to have my own room so that I could you know....."

Them: "No we don't."

I laughed

Kian: "Never mind."

Sam: "I was so going to call Busi and tell her that you are up to no good."

Kian: "Never, I love her too much I will never do anything to mess our good relationship."

Junior: "It must stay that way because I love Busi with....." We heard someone clear their throat. "No baby, not that way, she is like a baby sister to me. I love her for Kian and I will never do you like that.

Lulu: "If ever you think of any woman I will skin you alive."

Lulu was Junior's fiancée.

Junior: "You look sexy when you are talking like that baby."

Sam: "Wowowowo time out kids."

We laughed

Nono: "Some of us are kids."

Kian: "That's why you have ghost as a boyfriend."

They laughed hard.

Nono: "Do not do me like that Kian."

Kian: "Sorry my love."

Nono: "Let me go to the others."

We had brought everyone although some of them I haven't told you their names but we were a family and all the kids came along on that particular vacation.

We never had such when we were growing up because we never had that privilege. So when we were a little older we vowed to just have one holiday as kids to make up for the things we missed while growing up.

We really enjoyed out two days away. Before we knew it we were going back to our usual life. This time around I didn't have a heavy heart when leaving. I had a light and joyful heart because I was rushing to the love of my life. I left with Sam this time around because Junior had left with the fiancée to her parents' place.

Sam: "I like the person you have become. You were depressed and you had given up on life but now you found yourself."

Kian: "Ghost was the first one to make me realise myself worth."

Sam: "I truly give it to him he is a good kid."

Kian: "He has wisdom like I can never explain."

Sam: "Busi is a breath of fresh air too."

I smiled looking out of the window. I was really lucky to find love that way.

Kian: "I would love for us to be this way forever. You will spend a day with her tomorrow and you will see why I love her so much."

When we got to Johannesburg he used the other spare bedroom because it was Ghost's room. He was going back to work the following week so he also had two days to spare before he drove back to Centurion.

Kian: "Baby, I am home."

She giggled I was calling her just after I freshened up.

Busi: "I am over the moon. I am at the surgery now but I have my bag with me, all packed I am so excited."

Kian: "I can't wait my love."

We spoke about a few things because she was busy at work. I went to the shops to buy groceries because Sam was resting so I let him be. He drove us all the way I let him rest. When I got back he was bathing I started with dinner.

Sam: "What is the occasion?"

Kian: "Busi is coming after work."

Sam: "Mmmmmm Mrs can't wait to be laid."

Kian: "Come on we are not even at that level in our relationship."

Sam: "If you say so."

I just laughed. I was serious about that because I didn't want to mess up what we had. He went to watch soccer while I finished. When I was done I joined him but before long the door swung open I just jumped to her.

Sam: "Wowowowo time out kids."

She giggled hiding her face on my chest.

Busi: "Hello bhudi Sambulo."

Sam: "I am not bhudi to you and you sound funny are you even an African."

She giggled.

Busi: "Yes I am, remember I am a Radebe."

Sam: "By default maybe."

We laughed

Busi: "Belinda will be coming here too. Do you mind baby."

Kian: "Not at all the more the merrier I missed you badly though."

Busi: "I missed you more."

Sam: "Amen."

Kian: "Get a life."

While we were laughing there was a knock when I opened
Belinda was standing there looking gorgeous.

Kian: "Hi"

Beli: "Hello."

Kian: "Are you going out looking this hot?"

She giggled shyly.

Beli: "I was out with my girlfriends for movies."

Kian: "Okay come in love we are about to have dinner."

Beli: "Right on time."

When we went to the lounge Sam was so speechless for once in
his life but Belinda was just a kid.

Kian: "Let me go serve dinner."

Busi: "You want help baby?"

Sam: "No worries we will do it."

He stood up before they could say anything.

Sam: "I am in love."

He said when we were in the kitchen."

Kian: "Do not even go there she is a child and Kay will murder
you."

Sam: "I was going to nurture her."

We just laughed. We enjoyed the two days then Sam had to go Busi and Beli went home too. My year started with Ghost always in matches and my year was busier before we knew it we were coming from the Heritage Day and that was when my life took a bad turn.....

My relationship with Busi was doing great my grades were constant and I was happy. Ghost was always away for matches and Busi was doing the sixth year which was crucial and as a supportive boyfriend I was there. So one day the boys invited me to the after part after the play-offs.

I did not agree because I never loved parties. The coach said it was going to be awkward if I didn't go and I was the only one. We were in the amateur team and I was beginning to love the sport.

"You don't want the girls?"

One of the guys from the team asked me while I was watching them dancing with girls.

Kian: "No I am good my woman is waiting for me at home."

Guy: "Your loss."

Kian: "I am good my friend."

Just then I saw the chipmunks and I wished the earth to open up. There was no running so I let them get closer.

Micah: "Hay long time Kee. Fancy seing you here."

I felt irritated so much.

Kian: “Not long enough for that matter I would have loved for long to be forever.”

The other guys laughed.

Micah: “Lighten up Kee we know you and Ice-queen are inseparable.”

I was beyond irritated. Girls loved guys who did sports and I don't know why.

Kian: “It's Kian to you and Busi is not ice queen she is my queen.”

Guys: “Woooooooooooo.”

Fiona: “Let us go guys and”

Kian: “So you can talk? Why would you let your friends harass me?”

Micah: “We are not harassing you farm boy.”

I just became furious. I didn't want to do what I was going to regret later on so I just left. I took a cab when I got home I called Busi.

Kian: “Baby, please come over.”

She didn't let me ask twice she just agreed. That's what I like about her. I ordered because I was not in the cooking mood.

The food came the same time when she was just parking outside.

Busi: "How did you know I was hungry?"

Kian: "Soul mates remember."

We laughed and I kissed her. On that particular day my kiss had a hunger I could not understand. I deepened the kiss while caressing her. My hands moved to her top and I opened it. She didn't protest. I removed it and moved to her skirt. She was enjoying too then surprisingly she removed my shirt too.

Busi: "Let us take it to our room."

I was shocked because she suggested that.

Kian: "Are you sure because I won't be able to stop?"

Busi: "I do not want you to stop"

Kian: "Are you sure?"

She nodded and I was too excited to think of the consequences. I wanted it too as much all I was going to do was make it special. It was her first time so I was not going to mess it up. I was not that experienced too but I knew this came naturally.

Kian: "I love you baby with all I got."

Busi: "I love you more now please make me happy."

Kian: "At your service."

I removed the rest of her clothes and carried her to the bedroom. I laid her on top of the bed and removed the rest of mine. I went to her eyes locked because I didn't want her to feel shy. Her passion and fire drove me to the edge.

I got on top of her and kissed her while my hand roamed. Her body was so perfect I loved every inch of it. I moved from her lemon sized breast to her naval. She was releasing moans as I was giving her more pleasure. When my hand landed on her crown my eyes almost popped from their sockets. She was very wet and ready but I left her mouth and went down on her. While my finger went in my mouth came too to help and she screamed with pleasure. I removed the finger licked it put it back this time around accompanied by the other one. She was holding the bed cover for dear life. After some time she reached her orgasm and I smiled.

Busi: "How did you do that?"

Kian: "I wanted do give you pleasure my love."

Busi: "That was awesome."

Kian: "That was a starter."

She beamed and I just smiled. I was happy to be the one taking her through that journey.

Busi: "So I will feel much pleasure when we make love?"

Kian: "It will be painful at first but I hope I will make your first time memorable."

Busi: "I trust you."

The way she said it made my member dance for joy. I kissed her again and caressed her. When I felt that she was ready I entered. I was panicking because I didn't want to hurt her. After a few attempts she relaxed and I was in. To say my body was overwhelmed it was an understatement. I started moving slowly and I could tell she was in pain.

Kian: "Should I stop love?"

Busi: "No I want you all the way."

I kissed her and whispered how much I loved her to her ear. I moved slowly at first and I was in my small heaven. I didn't feel those things when I was with Fiona. Maybe Busi was really my soul mate. We climaxed the same time and I collapsed on top of her.

Busi: "Baby, I can't breathe."

Kian: "Sorry my love."

I stood up went to the bathroom and filled the tub with warm water. I came back and carried her to the bathroom.

Busi: "What are you doing?"

Kian: "I want to make sure you are okay." She covered her face with her hands. I placed her inside the tub. "I am coming."

When I got to the bedroom I had to get rid of the bed cover but it was worth it. I joined her and we just sat there chatting.

Kian: "Did you enjoy?"

Busi: "Thank you very much I enjoyed but it was mixed with pain."

Kian: "It will be better next time. Thank you for loving me."

Busi: "You are welcome."

Kian: "There is something I need to tell you."

Busi: "Let's hope it's not bad news."

Kian: "Not at all. Fiona and her chipmunks had been hitting on me."

Busi: "Oh."

I told her everything from the pictures to the events of the day.

Busi: "Some of the things I knew but I was waiting for you to come clean."

Kian: "I am sorry baby I didn't want to lose you no matter what."

Busi: “We are one now and there is nothing that will keep us apart. I am only asking you for this one favour Kian. Please do not hurt me because I can’t handle it I am not like mom. Do you know why I am still scared to call Uncle Kay dad?”

She was serious and I was becoming scared, I just nodded “no” to answer her question. She continued she was resting on my chest.

Busi: “My mom was married before she married Uncle Kay to my dad Eric. They were happy up until they discovered that she can never have kids. My dad seemed okay they adopted me. I was the most loved girl ever in the world. Then one day dad changed when his lost lover came. He would bring her to the house and they would make noises the whole night and mom would sleep with me in my room. I was young and I didn’t know what the noises were up until I was told by one of my friend at school that it was sex noises. I was so hurt because my friend told me that the noises were made by moms and dads so I was wondering why that woman will do that with my dad while mom cried herself to sleep. I never slept and I would sleep in class.

There was this one day when dad raped my mom I was watching and he didn’t see me. When he finished he showered and left mom to die there. I had never seen so much blood in my small life. I just called my aunt who stayed in Europe but

now she stays in US with her family and uncle Muzi. Uncle Kay was my dad's friend so I thought he knew what was going on. She was taken to hospital. My aunt and Uncle Kay made sure I got the visas fast and I moved to Europe with her while mom was recovering. She was beaten sometimes for caring and I watched all that.

When she recovered she came to take me and it was just the two of us for some days up until she came home with Belinda and Brandon. She had told me while we were in Europe that I will have a brother and a sister. I heard my aunt telling someone that mom beat up dad and his girlfriend who had his child that's when they divorced. Then it was the four of us for about three years until mom came home one day with a few days old baby with Uncle Kay. They got married after sometime because Uncle Kay loved her before my dad. I love Uncle Kay with all my heart but I can't bring myself to call him dad because of what dad did. I was watching him thinking he will become the animal that my dad turned into but he never did that. I had nightmares and I was depressed till they took me to a therapist. In fact three of them for me to be normal again I am deeply scarred that's why I do not want you to hurt me."

We were both in tears. I loved this woman and I was not willing to let her go or hurt her.

Kian: "I promise you I will try my level best to keep you happy and to never disappoint you."

Busi: "I love you so much."

Kian: "I love you more."

We kissed and this time we made love in the tub. It was heavenly. I dried us and left her in the bedroom while I went to get our food. I was more than in love with my woman it wasn't even funny.

I was more in love. From that day things got even better from our side. She was happy I was over the moon. One day Fiona came to the locker room and I was all alone. We argued and I was angry I just found myself kissing her. I was even disgusted at myself afterwards. I told Busi.

Busi: "So what does that mean?"

Kian: "I am so sorry baby I don't know what got into me but I just remembered when we were dating we used to argue and she never stopped up until I kiss her. I am sorry love."

Busi: "If I say I am not hurting I will be lying Kian. Those lips are mine and mine alone till the end of time."

I felt bad and I was willing to take any punishment she was going to give me.

Kian: "Baby I am really sorry I didn't mean to."

I was in tears I even knelt down and put my face in her knees.

Busi: "Get up. Please baby, I know that you are sorry." I got up and she hugged me tight buried her face in my chest. "Please do not hurt me Kian like I said before I won't be able to take it."

Kian: "Thank you love. I love you so much Busi I see forever with you. I do not see my life without you. I study hard because I want to take care of you. I thought I would wait for you to finish next year but I can't."

Busi: "What do you mean?"

I let her go and went to the closet where I had placed the ring then I went on one knee.

Kian: "Busisiwe Carol Radebe-Smith will you marry me."

She was still in shock but she nodded in approval. I was happy; I had bought a cheap but classy ring I had planned to propose the following year.

Kian: "Are you sure about this? Know that I am not doing this on impulse. I have been planning it for a long time and now I felt like I was going to lose you."

Busi: "I love you Kian and yes I will marry you even today if you want."

Kian: "Thank you very much."

Things went back to normal and we wrote our exam I was still on top of my game Ghost was a big help during exams. I was supposed to go home on a Thursday and Busi knew that but I changed my mind I wanted to sort out my blackmailer.

Kian: "Why are you doing this to me?"

Fiona: "I am going to show your so called fiancée the video."

Kian: "I told you nothing happened between Micah and I and that video was edited."

Fiona: "You kissed her and were fondling her."

Kian: "I was drunk and I wanted to go home but she kept pulling me down I am not the one who invited you and your friends to the party and nothing happened even if we were given more time nothing was going to happen."

Fiona: "I want just one night with you one last time."

Kian: "What?"

Fiona: "Come on it's not that I will be doing something I never did before. You were my first remember."

Kian: "Fiona if you want to tell Busi, go on ahead. Either way I will lose her so I do not have any more to say. I love Busi and she is the only woman I would rather lose her with my dignity intact."

I was done being at her mercy. She started blackmailing me the moment she saw the video and I do not know who took it. It was during the end of year party and I was drunk. You might say I am hiding behind alcohol I am a coward of a man but I was really wasted and it happened.

From that time I made sure I left alcohol. I was never touching it till the end of time. I looked at Fiona who was shocked by my statement.

Fiona: "Are you....."

Kian: "Fiona I thought you wanted us to be civil now I know it was a lie. I will never go back to you even if Busi leaves me. I would rather die lonely than go back to you."

Before she could say anything I heard the key from the key hole and I had forgotten to leave mine there. I didn't know if it was Busi or Ghost but they both had keys. I literally froze I was really screwed.

When we both looked at the door Busi was standing there looking hurt and shocked. No matter how I was going to explain my situation she was going to think I am lying. I had promised her never to keep things from her and here I was locked in a flat with my ex when I was supposed to be in Mooi River.

Kian: "Baby, it's....."

Busi: "Hello Fiona fancy seeing you here, baby hi."

She was too calm for my liking and I knew I was in deeper than I thought.

Fiona: "I am here because you don't satisfy your man and he comes running after my friends and I."

I looked at Busi she was very calm. One of the traits I loved about her, she never got angry in front of her enemies and treats and Fiona was one of that.

Busi: "Fiona, please get a life. There is nothing wrong with our love life or intimacy. Kian does not love you because if he did he was the one who was going to be running after you. I hate petty people because they are a waste of my time. You finished your exams a long time ago you are supposed to be at home with your family preparing for your graduation in advance or planning to sub because I suspect you failed some of your modules busy running after unavailable man."

I wanted to kiss her but I knew I was in trouble.

Fiona: "Ah eh....."

Busi: "Cats got your tongue?"

She grabbed her bag and stormed out. I was left with goliath in the room.

Kian: Baby, I can explain I....."

I didn't know where to begin. I didn't want to lose my woman.

Kian: "Baby, let us sit down please so that I can explain to you."

Busi: "Kian I asked you a number of times to be honest and to never hurt me. This time around I am beyond hurt I do not think there is a comeback from this. Why are you still entertaining Fiona in the first place? How did she know where we are staying to begin with?"

I had messed up big time. This was all my doing and I was going to lose her either way.

Kian: "Please let me tell you everything and you will decide whether to believe me or not."

Busi: "This is what you should have thought of before inviting that witch into our place. This is our home Kian. It belongs to us, ghost, you and I, we are a family and we promised each other we will keep it sacred no matter what. We do not bring outsiders who are not family remember."

I had messed up really bad.

Kian: "Please sit down."

She did without hesitation but the passion was gone and I was the one to blame for that because I brought that misery.

Kian: “Baby, I went to the end year party as I told you but something happened there. I was drunk so when I wanted to come home Micah pushed me to the couch and she started kissing me. I am guilty too because I responded and when I pushed her off me it was too late. She brought me closer to her and we kissed again and sat there together. Someone filmed it and they want to spite me somehow; they edited the video. Fiona got a hold of the video so she started blackmailing me. She wanted me to sleep with her and I refused. I swear to God I was not going to sleep with her. I told her that even if she told the truth from her version about that night I was never going back to her.

When she came here, point of correction when I asked her to come here I was hoping that she will listen to reason and stop this nonsense. I am not saying forgive me but I am saying baby please try to understand I was wrong and I didn’t mean to hurt you.”

Busi: “It seems you do not trust me enough to tell me at first hand. Kian I am emotional but I reason too. I know you promised that those were my lips only but you broke that promise again. The worst part is when I found Fiona here. I will never forgive you for that. You have hurt me more than I could imagine. I thought you were better than this. You know how we value our space ghost too is part of this space because we

made it home. You let these people be a factor in your life. Can you imagine if I had done the same how many people were going to rule me because of their pettiness?"

She was right I allowed the devil in. I allowed those girls to rule my life unintentionally.

Kian: "Please hear me out B, I am so sorry."

Busi: "Not as sorry as I am. I tried and God knows I tried. I even let my gut down for you. I was willing to let go everything I believed in because of you."

Kian: "I am so sorry my love it was very stupid of me it will never happen again."

Busi: "I am not staying longer to see that happening. I love you God knows I do but there is a limit for everything."

I was not losing my girl over this. I know I had made a number of mistakes and she had forgiven me but I had a feeling that this was the last straw. I had tasted her patience enough and I would have no one to blame except myself if she left me. I went down on my knees.

Kian: "Baby I am sorry. My chuckle dove." She didn't even blink and I knew that this time around I was never going to win. I was going to lose her either way. "Tell me what you want me to do and I will do it."

Busi: "Anything?"

Kian: "Yes my love, anything."

Busi: "I would like you to leave me alone so that I can live my life."

My heart skipped a beat and I was almost hyperventilating I didn't want her to see that.

Kian: "Please do not ask me to do that. I can do anything and I mean anything except that. I love you and I want to show you how sorry I am."

Busi: "You are sorry."

Kian: "Yes I am sorry."

Busi: "Okay I forgive you."

Kian: "You do?" I was smiling from ear to ear.

Busi: "Yes I do forgive you so that you won't live your life thinking that I have a grudge with you."

Kian: "What do you mean?"

Busi: "I mean I forgive you of all the wrongs you did to me. Now you can enjoy without me hovering over you."

Kian: "Baby

no please."

Busi: "I will never love anyone and I will never let my gut down now because I compromised for you now look at what happened to me."

I was really losing her. I was nothing without her and I had no reason to be around this area anymore if I didn't have her there was no reason to even finish what I came here for. Dad was going to have to forgive me because I was not going to survive without her.

Kian: "Honey, I....."

Busi: "Yes I know that you are sorry and that you didn't mean for this to happen. I am also sorry I am not what you wanted in a picture of your perfect relationship."

Kian: "Baby please you are enough for me I was stupid and I will"

Busi: "Have you realised that we have been going in circles for some time? "

Kian: "I wish I could turn back the time."

Busi: "We cannot so let us move on. I love you and I will always do but its time I let nature take its course."

She stood up and left me there kneeling like a fool I am. I didn't have anyone to blame except myself. I was not going to let her go. Even if it meant I grovelled I was going to do it. I wish I had

been man enough but regretting was not going to get me anyway.

I was done moping around; I needed to take back my life. Fiona had to leave my life for good and once she did her friends were going to follow her. I was happy that they were done with their studies and hopefully they failed and got humiliated. I dialed Sam's number.

Sam: "You miss me already? Don't worry I am closing today I will be driving home tomorrow."

Kian: "I messed up big time."

My voice was even shaking.

Sam: "What is going on Kian?"

I told him everything and he cursed a number of times.

Kian: "Please say something. I know I am a jerk, an idiot and all names you may think of but please say something."

Sam: "You are not all the things you said Kian but you are as naive as they come. The moment Busi showed interest in you all people saw you as a threat and a target Busi is right to say she did not let them rule her. You on the other had let them rule you. Those girls do not love you. They want a piece of you and also want to humiliate Busi in the process. I know you might think you are a nobody but the moment you dated her

you became a somebody and I bet also the people who are in the entertainment industry who want to see her mom broken might use you as a weapon because you are close to Busi.”

He was right and I had never thought of it that way. I was really naive.

Kian: “May I take a taxi to your place so that we drive home together? I am not in the mood and it won’t be healthy for me.”

Sam: “No problem, just tell me when you arrive here I will pick you up.”

Kian: “Thank you.”

I dropped the call and tried Busi’s number it sent me to voicemail. I left countless messages up until I reached Centurion my brother was there all smiles waiting for me.

Kian: “Big bro.”

Sam: “You are a mess people won’t even see the family resemblance.”

We laughed as he took my bag. I ended up taking one small bag because my day was already messed up.

Sam: “I will drop you in the house.”

Kian: “Can’t you take me to work with you?”

Sam: "I am not your lover."

We laughed, at least I was laughing.

Kian: "I was willing to tell pa about us. I even engaged her."

Sam: "You what?"

Kian: "I was willing to ask for permission from the dads even if it killed me."

Sam: "Why are you talking in past tense you can still talk to them?"

Kian: "Busi is angry and she broke up with me."

Sam: "Did she give you the ring back?"

Kian: "No she didn't."

Sam: "Then there is hope. We need to put Fiona to her place. We need her in front of her father because he will never condone her behaviour."

Kian: "You are right I never thought of it that way. Thank you very much."

Sam: "That's what family is for. Hurt Busi again and you will cease to be family."

Kian: "Roger that."

I had renewed hope although I knew that it was a long shot. He took me to work and we spent a few hours then it was time to go home. We drove straight home because he didn't want to go to the end year party with me I was still sulking. Busi was still not talking to me. From his place we drove to Mooi River.

The following day I received a call early in the morning I didn't check I just answered.

Kian: "Hello."

Voice: "I warned you and you didn't listen now run my boy."

It sent chill to my spine I wish I would say I started running but hell no I loved Busi and I was going to die trying.

Kian: "Uncle Kay."

Uncle Kay: "Uncle Kay my wrinkled black ass."

I wanted to laugh but it was not a laughing matter. I was too scared to even think.

Kian: "I am so sorry I didn't mean to and it will never happen again."

Uncle Kay: "It will never happen because this is your last Christmas alive so say your goodbyes."

He really meant it and I was willing to die for her. I had messed up and it was time to man up."

After the call I took a bath and lucky enough pa was still sleeping I took the bakkie and drove to Fiona's place. It was time for her to face the music. When I got there her pa was awake in the kitchen sipping coffee.

Him: "Kian, long time what brings you here?"

Kian: "How are you Pa? I am afraid this is not a friendly call. May you please call your daughter and wife because this is a matter of life and death?"

He was worried but I was done bending backwards for people because people were screwing me over and it hurt to be screwed from your back. Not pulling a ghost on you but it really hurt. When they got there Fiona was surprised she even looked like she had seen a ghost. After the greetings I told him the whole story and he was angry.

Him: "So I send you to school to do that? What did I say to you when you left him? Didn't I tell you that you will regret. Now you are harassing the boy and acting all slutty."

Fiona: "Sorry pa."

Him: "As for you, I thought you were advising this child well. If she fails you are the one who will pay for her sub fees. I am done taking care of her mess ever again."

He was looking at the wife who was looking down embarrassed. Fiona was truly her mother's daughter. I think the mother was influencing her choices.

Kian: "That is all I wanted and I won't be responsible for what I will do to her and her friends if they continue because Busi is my fiancée and I will marry her so if they do anything stupid again I will definitely retaliate."

Him: "I will help you."

Fiona was sniffing I didn't even care.

Kian: "This is what I came for so if you may excuse me."

Him: "Please stay for breakfast."

Kian: "I would love to but I have to take care of the mess they created."

Him: "I understand."

I said my goodbyes and left. I had blocked her on my social media and phone so I wasn't worried about her calling me. When I got home my phone beeped and I checked it was a number I didn't know.

"I am truly sorry, hope you will forgive me I will never hurt you again. I know I was being petty. I see what I have done now.
Fiona"

I didn't bother to reply I got in the house and pa was making breakfast.

Pa: "You are an early riser. I thought you would be tired from your journey."

Kian: "I am good pa."

Pa: "You have a parcel. I had even forgotten your birthday." Or snap, who forgets their birthdays? I just laughed at myself. "I thought I was the one who was supposed to get old. How could you forget your special day? You even look grumpy are you okay?"

Kian: "Pa I am okay who brought the parcel?"

Pa: "It was delivered this morning and I bet the person knew that it is your birthday today. I also bet they have money because it was brought by a courier company."

My heart was beating fast and I was guessing it could be ghost or Busi. Snap. When I was about to go open it ghost called.

Ghost: "Old man."

I laughed

Kian: "Little man. Thank you for the present."

Ghost: "What present mine is coming next year you will get it when I come home because it is too big to be sent to a farm?"

I laughed then I knew the present was from Busi.

Kian: "How is Scotland?"

He talked and talked up until my battery was low. I was glad that he is still unaware of the situation because he was going to give me a mouthful. Pa had gone to his chores so I went to the dining room to check my parcel.

When I opened it I just dropped on my knees in the floor.....

I looked at my present and I cursed myself. There was a card written on it, I looked again at the pregnant test and baby scan. I was happy but sad at the same time. You know that melancholic feeling. I was shaking; I took the card and read.

“I know when you receive this message and present it will be your birthday. I am scared too I didn’t know how to do it because I was scared you will think that I am careless or something, no we are still at school and young but I am ready. We created this life together and I love ‘him’ more because he is going to be a symbol of our love. I know you are probably saying it’s a girl because you wanted our first child to be a girl.”

I smiled through my tears. I was going to be a father but I had messed up.

“I am shaking on my booths because I know my dad is going to skin us alive but just enjoy your birthday I couldn’t think of a better way to tell you and a better present because I knew you were going to be far. I love you Kian please take care. Happy birthday, daddy.

NB// It was hard keeping the secret but I hope it was worth it. I hope they delivered on time because I bent backwards to make sure it arrives on time.”

She had sent it a week before my birthday. I was going to be a father. I had mixed feelings I checked my phone from the charger at least it had some power I dialled her number and surprisingly she answered.

Kian: "Baby, thank God."

Busi: "Hello Kian."

That was cold but I was so going to thank her anyway.

Kian: "Thank you for the birthday present I loved it."

Busi: "Oh, I forgot to cancel the delivery. I made it a week before."

My heart sank, so she would have cancelled if she had remembered.

Kian: "Please forgive me MaRadebe."

She suppressed a laugh but I knew she wanted to laugh

Busi: "Baby I forgave you a long time ago."

Kian: "So we are fine now?"

Busi: "Not by a long shot. We will co-parent if you want."

She was still angry at me I could sense it. She suggested co-parenting which meant that if she wanted to move on then I was going to watch her love someone else while I stayed on the side line with regret.

Kian: "Baby, please."

Busi: "I haven't told my parents yet about the baby because they are still angry about the break-up so you will do the honours."

Kian: "Baby, please Uncle Kay will kill me; he called me in the morning telling me to run. If he hears that I deflowered you before marriage he will kill me then bury me and exhume me to bury me in the lions' den just in case I wake up."

She laughed and the laughter that I have missed for the past few hours.

Busi: "Dad will never harm a fly."

Kian: "Baby

Advertisement

you are his daughter of course he will not murder you but as for me I am having my last Christmas. Please tell my daughter that I was an ass and I hurt her mommy but I was sorry. I am sorry and I love her, I will always love her till the end of time."

She laughed again.

Busi: "Good for you. If you die on us then I will look for a step father for my daughter the moment I leave the graveyard and we will leave happily ever after."

I screamed over the phone. Busi wanted me to have grey hair I tell you.

Kian: "I will be a ghost and haunt you. When you open the fridge I will be there looking into your eyes and when you let that moron touches you I will burn his hands and lips."

Busi: "Wowowowo not so fast tiger. So should I burn Fiona and her chipmunks?"

I wanted to laugh but I knew it was going to be insensitive.

Kian: "I am sorry my love. I know no amount of sorries will ever be enough to show you how sorry I am."

Busi: "Listen I got to go because I will be late for church."

Kian: "Busi, I love you and kiss the princess for me, tell her daddy will make it up to you two. I will spend the rest of my life proving that to you."

Busi: "Okay."

I deserved her coldness; I was not going to complain and whine I was going to man up and get my family back.

Kian: "Damn !!"

Sam: "Cursing this early in the morning I guess you are in trouble."

I showed him my present.

Sam: "Shiz niz."

Kian: "My point exactly. I do not know what to do."

Sam: "Is she still mad at you?"

Kian: "Mad is an understatement."

Sam: "So are you keeping the baby?"

Kian: "Hell yes. There was never another option. She said we can co-parent."

Sam: "oh, oh."

Kian: "Yep and I am scared I will lose her forever."

Sam: "I told you to man up. For now let us go to town tata sent us to do a few errands then we will come and celebrate your birthday."

Me: "I am not in the mood for celebrating. I am 27 today about to be a dad and single my fiancée is angry with me."

Sam: "Be glad that she is still your fiancée. Keeping the ring means she still has hope for you two to get back together."

Kian: "Uncle Kay is going to murder me."

Sam: "I was coming to that point. I was hoping to go with you so that we talk to him."

Kian: "When there is a baby involved we need to tell the dads."

Sam: "I foresee death."

We both laughed. They were going to murder me I knew it.

Kian: "Let's go then."

Sam: "You are driving because pa said we have to use the bakkie."

Kian: "Let's go. I don't even have appetite Fiona's family offered me breakfast and I couldn't stay in the same room with them."

Sam: "You what?" I told him everything. "Serves her right. I would have murdered her."

Kian: "I wanted to but you know her pa is a good man."

Sam: "Yah you are right. That man doesn't deserve both of them. His other kids are better."

Kian: "Let us move on from this. I am hungry now should we order breakfast first?"

Sam: "As long as you are paying."

We both laughed. We had just arrived in town

Kian: "I can be your pimp and then get the money for our breakfast."

Sam: "Not going to happen. Let me buy breakfast seeing that you are going to be a single parent who will need things for the princess."

We laughed

Kian: "Not funny. I am going to spoil her rotten"

Sam: "No doubt about that as for me I am taking her to Disney land for her first birthday."

I just smiled thinking of the fact that I was going to be dad. We ate after breakfast we went around looking for what we were sent to buy.

Kian: "I wish we could not celebrate."

Sam: "Never happening Nono will murder you."

Kian: "I will be better dead because Uncle Kay is going to kill me anyway."

We laughed

Sam: "He will resurrect you and murder you just for the heck of it."

Kia: "I believe he will. On a serious note, I am scared of losing her than I am scared of Uncle Kay. I will never survive without her. The fact that she might find someone better scares me to death."

Sam: "That girl loves you. She is just angry but the moment she calms down you have to make sure that you keep her for good."

Kian: "I will and I will make sure I bring her here first things first."

Sam: "She is here."

Kian: "She will be here first thing she forgives me."

Sam: "I mean she is here as in there is her car and she is in Mooi River as in now."

I panicked when I saw her car parked there. What was she doing here? We were just driving in with Sam from town.

Kian: "I am so dead."

I kept repeating that till Sam slapped me a little.

Sam: "Get it together. This might be your chance."

Kian: "What was that for?"

Sam: "Man; keep it together because if you are panicking you will mess things up."

Kian: "Okay."

I took breathing exercises, I had to man up. When we approached the dining room we could hear laughter I stopped Sam we were going to eavesdrop.

Voice: "My sister was just thinking to keep the baby issue to herself but I told her not to because sooner or later my parents were going to find out."

Sam: "That's Belinda."

I just nodded.

Baba: "We understand although we would have loved it if it was our son who told us this news. Now we don't know how to handle this because we do not know his intentions."

Beli: "When we came here we wanted to celebrate his birthday we didn't know that you were not aware. Sorry for my big mouth."

Pa: "It's okay we understand, so you say he already proposed to you."

Busi: "I know you might not approve since you didn't know about....."

Mrs Khumalo: "Oh nonsense we are happy that you are here and we will be having a grandchild so what are your plans."

Sam looked at me and left me standing to go inside.

Sam: "We are back." They all kept quiet. "Oh hello Busi, hey Belinda."

Tata: "So you know them too and you didn't find it in you to tell us. It's been a year and some months and now there is a baby on the way."

Tata was not fast to anger but he was breathing fire and I knew that I had messed up. I got in and I was met by baba's angry fist. When I was about to recover a slap from tata followed. I just heard Busi screaming as my nose bled.

Busi: "Please do not hurt him."

She was crying.

Pa: "We won't hurt him but this boy needs to learn his lesson."

They dragged me outside and when we got to the barn they secured the door so that no one could enter. Moms and the girls were just screaming for them to stop. Sam and Junior didn't even think of defying them because they knew they were going to get it too. When we were inside they started talking and I was shaking like a leaf.

Tata: "I do not know whether to be angry or hurt that you could keep such a beauty away from us."

They looked at each other and laughed

Baba: "I will not kill you because your fiancée and baby needs you."

Pa: "We will just remove the deception in you."

Oh boy was I in trouble? Hell yah, they beat my 'black' ass to the pub but I took it like a man. After that they hugged me and laughed

Baba: "You sure know how to choose."

Tata: "He must look for someone like that but older for you."

He was saying to pa.

Pa; "I am even getting excited from the idea.

Were these men serious? Kian: "I am so sorry."

Baba: "All forgiven as long as you won't hurt her again."

Kian: "She told you?"

Tata: "Yes and if you lose her then you might as well find another family."

Baba: "We might even look for a stepfather for your child."

Pa: "Around here in Mooi River just to spite you."

I was shit scared because they meant it. They opened the barn and Busi was the first one to rush to me.

Baba: "We should have killed this moron of yours."

Busi: "Nooooooooooooo look at him."

Kian: "Just bruises baby. Pa: "Let us excuse them."

They left with Junior and Sam laughing at me.

Kian: "I am so sorry baby I will never do it again.

Busi: "I....."

Kian: "Baby I am not saying that you should feel sorry for me because I got a beating."

She laughed through her tears

Busi: "I love you baby with all my heart but there are things we need to sort out. We are far from being okay not by a long shot because for starters I thought by now your family should have known about us but no you kept me in the closet."

Oh boy I knew I was going to be in trouble but I had hoped I was going to redeem myself no matter what.

Kian: "I was afraid there was no time because you saw them I needed to devise a plan."

Busi: "It's almost two years Kian."

Kian: "I know love but I am not saying I am ashamed of you or what. Maybe I was being a coward."

Busi: "We need to work on that and the issue of your cheating."

Kian: "But baby is it called cheating?"

Busi: "Don't even think about it. Let me calm down because you are not even my favourite person right now.

Kian: "I understand and I am not saying forget it but.....ouch."

Busi: "Sorry baby, I hope I never see you beaten ever."

We laughed

Kian: "You will soon because your dad promised to kill me; remember that."

Busi: "Your dads should know that you are old now and you will be a father soon."

Kian: "To them I will always be a small boy. All of us are kids to them so I will make sure I behave because can you just imagine being beaten in front of Kialla?"

Busi: "Who is that?"

Kian: "Our daughter."

She smiled and I fell in love one more time.

Busi: "I love the name. You want to have similar names?"

Kian: "Yes and I hope it's a daughter."

Busi: "What does it mean?"

Kian: "For me I do not worry about the meaning I only love the sound of it."

Busi: "If it's a boy."

Kian: "He will be Keith."

Busi: "Oh here you were questioning us about the B names."

Kian: "You inspired me with that as I was looking at your family tree I loved the way your names stood out."

She smiled. They had a beautiful family tree from their genealogy I was glad to be part of it. Oho I spoke too soon.

Busi: "Let us go before dad sees that we are missing."

Kian: "Baby, why don't you....."

Busi: "No Kian we are still working out our issues remember."

Kian: "Come on baby. I said I am sorry."

Busi: "You should know me better by now words come easily so I am waiting for your actions."

Kian: "But....."

Busi: "No Kian you have hurt me so much and I am not going to let you off the hook easily. I forgive you because I love you so much God know how much I love you and I can't picture myself with any other man."

At least that was something to work towards. I was not going to rush her. I was going to let her heal. I was working on proving myself to her; starting with: changing my number and blocking people from my social media; I was not going to lose my woman while making stupid mistakes.

Kian: "I understand my love; I will be waiting for you. As long as give me a chance and please do not take off your ring."

She smiled.

Busi: "What if I find someone?"

Kian: "Busi don't send me to jail because I have a daughter to take care of."

She giggled and I took her to my arms.

Kian: "I am so sorry I will never do it again."

Busi: "Even if you do it you are not mine to claim."

Kian: "Okay time out. Please help me go clean up."

She obliged although I thought she was going to refuse. We passed the family outside with Belinda talking to Sam and Nono. After she was done cleaning me we joined others.

Pa: "Happy birthday future dad."

They laughed. We ate pre-lunch then Busi and Belinda had to drive back. I was left with a sore heart because I was still in the middle of nowhere. I was left with hope that she loved me unconditionally.

I was left in no mood to celebrate and it was obvious to everyone. The other kids were excused; the dads and moms wanted to talk to me.

Pa: "Kian we would love to hear your plans."

He took the bull by its horn. I was hoping they will beat around the bush first but anyway they were not a bunch to beat around the bush they were straight talkers.

Kian: "I want to say I am sorry for everything I did. I know I was supposed to tell you about Busi before I could even propose but I was scared you were going to disapprove."

Tata: "Like all the times you had to assume Kian. If she could encourage you in school and love you regardless of the background then she was worthy to be part of the family. I know we said school first but you are not growing any younger and we can never control the matters of the heart. She is coming from your similar background. They are a mixed family just like us. She is rich she could have chosen any rich guy but she chose you and she loved you still. Next year she is going to be finishing and soon she will be a doctor. I can go on and on the whole day but all I need to say is that sometimes you need to think like a man. You are allowed to make mistakes and you are human you will continue to make mistake that is very much inevitable."

He was right

Advertisement

before I could breathe baba got in.

Baba: “You are going to be a father now and you have to think for your family first before you think of yourself. The reason why we beat you up was not because you made someone pregnant. No, how can we beat someone for being man enough to knock down such a beauty.” They laughed and I just shook my head and looked down. “All I am saying as your father is; you do not hurt your partner no matter what. Once you choose her you have to protect her from the vultures like Fiona. It is your duty as a head of the family to protect your wife and kids. You are not a kid anymore you are an adult so you know what is good and what is bad. Fiona was never good to you. We might have loved her and encouraged you two but the moment she left you high and dry then she seized being part of this family and we will never accept her again. This family has values you break those values then you will never be part of it. You might have been young when we picked ourselves up but we made a vow to protect this family. People outside might think we are a happy family but we worked hard for this. For us to accept that we are a mixed family we fought tooth and nail. We could go on and on but we still get people who think we bewitched your father to let us stay here. We do not care because we know where we are coming from. There are people who still judge us in this democratic South Africa but we do not care because we have values as a family. I might seem like a preacher to you but all I am saying is Fiona is nothing compared to the challenges

you will face for just loving your woman so much. I know people are already judging you because she is from a different race. Please we raised you better. Take this as a curve and move forward. If she forgives you make sure you develop a backbone because we didn't raise a week man."

That was a mouthful and a lot to take in but I was really learning and I was never going to be a week man.

Mrs Langa: "We sent you to get one thing and you got lucky and found the love of your life. We are not going to punish you for the mistakes that are done already what we are saying is we are happy with your choice of a life partner and we approve but this is just the beginning of the journey."

I smiled from ear to ear; when I looked at them I was hoping to see them making a joke out of me but they were really serious. At least they approved of her.

Pa: "We are serious and we will only do our part the rest is on you. So what are your intentions?"

Kian: "I love Busi very much and I would love to take care of both of them the moment I can."

Pa: "Okay now that we know then we will tell you what will happen. We hear that she broke up with you. We are not going to get involved there you will make sure you get her yourself. We will pay all the damages and bride price if they charge us.

You will work towards saving for your wedding because you are the husband. We hear that you already moved from the flat to an apartment so you will have to make sure that you find ways to take care of your family.”

Mrs Khumalo: “As a man of the house it is not always the case that you provide so do not be frustrated if you can’t; just work extra hard all will be fine. Your family needs more love than luxury. I am talking from experience remember when we barely could survive in the farm. We could sleep on empty stomachs but we were more than happy because your dads loved us unconditionally so yes we all need luxury but what will be the use of that luxurious life when you are always crying and sick because of stress and depression? So make sure you balance the two. If you are happy and you can give the kids the luxury they need so be it.”

Okay I was one lucky bastard I tell you. You would never find such family. I was grateful for that.

Pa: “We will sit down tomorrow as adults and discuss your future but be prepared because we will be going to meet the family soon. It is not how I pictured things to work out but what can we do because we can never control fate no matter how hard we try.”

There was quite for some time and I knew I had to thank them for everything.

Kian: "First of all I would like to apologise again for not having a backbone. I thought I was sparing Fiona's feelings but at the end I destroyed a good thing I had and I might lose the love of my life because of that. I learnt from my mistakes I will never do it again. Secondly I am apologising for not being upfront from the onset. I was scared that you might disapprove because I still had school but for now I would love for you to know that she encourages me all the way. I am a better person because of her and ghost. Lastly I would love to thank you for being my family. I am never going to thank you for the beating though." They laughed hard. "I know I made mistakes and I will continue to make them but I will always be grateful to be part of the family. I will never disappoint, I will make sure I pass with flying colours."

Baba: "We trust you so for now excuse us and make sure you take pain medication before you sleep."

Kian: "Yes I will."

I left going to my room to sleep a little. What a birthday. I smiled to myself. I sent a message before resting.

"Please forgive me again. Let me know when you arrive at home. Please kiss the princess and mommy for me."

I placed the phone under the pillow and slept. I was awakened by my ringing phone.

Kian: "Hello."

I didn't even look at the caller.

Busi: "You are sleeping?"

Kian: "I am in pain; these things don't even stop the pain, I wonder why they are called pain medication." She giggled. "How can you laugh I am even swollen the whole body."

Busi: "Sorry I will tell princess that you are a cry baby."

I laughed.

Kian: "Come kiss it better for me."

Busi: "Sorry not my property."

We both laughed talked about different things but she was not curving in at all. I was content with the way things were.

The following day I was even worse. Nono and Mrs Khumalo had to come and nurse me. Those men had no mercy they were not supposed to do that. Busi called and I asked Nono to tell her that I was not feeling well which was the truth; I couldn't even talk properly. She sent countless messages I was happy that she still cared.

When they went to see Kay he was fuming. I was told to remain behind. Busi was also shocked but I was left with no choice because it was beyond my control. Kay curved in but he said he

wanted to talk to me first. I was nervous I just had to go with Sam.

Sam: "Are you scared?"

Kian: "More than scared."

Sam: "You will be fine."

Kian: "As long as you are not going to leave me alone with him in a room I will be safe."

Sam: "Are you that scared?"

Kian: "I am beyond scared because I know he doesn't make idle threats."

When we arrive her mom was happy to see us but she voiced out her disappointment about the pregnancy.

Mom: "They had to stop her from participating in church activities because she got pregnant out of wedlock."

I was so hurt. I was the one to blame because I was the experienced one.

Kian: "I am so sorry I wish I could turn back the time."

Mom: "Then you wouldn't be a father."

I couldn't finish my conversation because Kay asked me to join him in the study. I looked at Mrs P with pleading eyes but she was absent minded. I was crossing my fingers for Sam to come

through. When we got there his face changed. God I was dying before I could see my princess. I just closed my eyes and asked God to forgive me of all my sins.

Uncle Kay: "Open your eyes fool." I slowly opened them and looked at his angry face. "What did I say to you?" I didn't know if the question was a rhetorical or it was for what exactly. "Am I speaking Greek or am I talking in tongues?"

I was not going to answer that question.

Kian: "I am so sorry....."

Uncle Kay: "Did I give you permission to talk?"

Kian: "No but....."

Uncle Kay: "What? You are not about to interrupt me while I am talking.

I was like a fool. How was I going to answer when he didn't want to give me a chance and how was I going to keep quiet when I was told that I am supposed to answer.

Uncle Kay: "I told you that Busi and all my kids are my life so you go on and defy me like that. What am I going to do with you?"

Kian: "I am sorry."

Uncle Kay: "That was a rhetorical question fool."

Okay I was really a fool. I just left my mouth hanging. There was nothing I was going to do because I was in the wrong. I would have done the same if places were traded. I was in love with my unborn child already and I was going to be a father so I really understood where he was coming from.

Kian: "I am so sorry I do not have"

Uncle Kay: "I am going to say this once boy. Say sorry one more time and....."

He reached for his drawer and.....

What the.....

I was on my toes I was shaking I almost peed my pants I didn't know what to do. I just closed my eyes and I was hoping to see my life flashing before me.

You know what people say about your life flashing before your eyes and it means that you are about to die. I was hoping to see at least the glimpse of it or even the future but nothing as in dololo.

Uncle Kay: "Open your eyes fool when I talk to you." He had anger written in his voice. I was not ready to die. I was told that he does not make idle treats so I was waiting for the gun to go off. "Here take this." Okay, you cannot say take this if it's a gun. I slowly opened my eyes. He was carrying an envelope and I was about to open my mouth when he spoke.

Uncle Kay: "Kian you are about to be a father and husband you have to man up."

Kian: "I thought you were going to shoot me as per promise."

Uncle Kay: "What?"

Oh boy I was a fool and I felt stupid

Kian: "You said you were going to shoot me if ever I make Busi cry."

He laughed at me. I just looked aside shocked to be specific.

Uncle Kay: "As much as I want to shoot you right now I have to say: one I will need a gun to shoot you and I don't own one. We do not own a gun and we will never own it because no amount of guns you have will protect you if death knocks at your door guns will never protect you. I do not see a point of buying a gun even if they give lame excuses as in it's for protection because only God can protect us. How many people have you known in your life who bought guns for protection but had died? Where were the guns when death came knocking at the door.

Secondly I love my daughter too much to let her live a single life because as much as you have hurt her she still loves you deeply so if I kill you I will be killing her spirit which I don't want. I have accepted it already that you will be in my life forever.

Thirdly what will I tell your kid when he/she asks about their father? I will be the bad guy and my wife will be angry at me for life you know after God I love my wife to the moon and back."

I was praying I would love my wife the way this man loved his wife. He might seem scary to me but he was always a softy when he talked about his wife or his kids. He also showed it because his face glowed all the time he saw her. I was surrounded by love all corners so there was no way I wasn't going to get it right.

Kian: "I am sorry to assume."

Uncle Kay: "That's the other thing; man up and stop apologising it's a turn off. Maybe be Busi loves you like that but I don't want you to apologise in front of me."

Kian: "S.....okay."

Uncle Kay: "Now go on take your time in analysing this and come back to me with your answer. If you do not want the conditions there I will have to sit down with the lawyers with you present then we will amend. Now you have to take care of the family and I do not expect you to be engaged forever it's for men who run away from commitment because there is a difference between marriage and a wedding. I would love to see my daughter getting into this marriage because I do not want bastard grandkids."

Kian: "But she is still mad at me."

Uncle Kay: "What did I just say now? Man up."

Kian: "I will work on that."

Uncle Kay: "That is all I want to hear and you hurt my daughter again this time around I will break your knee caps for real. What your old men did to you will be nothing compared to what I will do to you." I choked on my saliva. So he knew it must be.....
"It's Belinda and there is nothing that happens under my roof that I don't know about. I even know the day you deflowered her. I am a doctor and her father." I was shocked and I wished

the earth could open and swallow me. "I trust my daughter and her decisions so that is why I never questioned her in anyway. I only question her when it comes to God's law and you committed a sin but hay who am I to judge?" I was feeling sad that I made her do that. "Do not beat yourself up now you have to make things right."

Kian: "Yes sir I will."

Uncle Kay: "Now off you go before I change my mind."

Kian: "Thank you."

I left with the envelope he gave to me; when I closed the door I sighed with relief.

Sam: "I was about to come and see if you are still alive."

Kian: "What a brother you are I could have died before you even got to the study."

Sam: "I was still devising a way to leave Mrs P. She knows that I have a crush on her daughter."

Kian: "What?"

Sam: "My question exactly."

Kian: "Do you by any chance talked to someone besides me?"

Sam: "Never, I was never going to do that let alone tell people; she is still a child I was waiting for next year after her matric."

Kian: "Let's go before they hear us."

Thank heavens the rooms were all sound proof.

When we got to the lounge Belinda was with her mom and Sam couldn't even look at them.

Mom: "Busi has gone out with her aunt Noe

Advertisement

Uncle Muzi's wife so you may wait for her if you want."

I was never going to wait in the house because I was agitated and Sam was very uncomfortable. I was going to be comfortable at the apartment. We were going to drive back the following day.

Kian: "No Mrs P we will be at the apartment if she wants to come see me I will be spending the night there before we drive back home."

Mom: "I will sure tell her."

Sam: "Thank you for your hospitality ma'am."

Mom: "Don't mention it. I am glad you came with him because he was a mess."

We laughed

Kian: "I was not that messy."

Mom: "You can hide but I can see through your soul."

Beli: "Let me take you to the car."

Her mother gave her "the look" I was just laughing inwardly.

Beli: "I am only going with them outside mommy. You can even look through the window I will never do anything to your precious son-in-law."

I could give it to her she was clever. She diverted the mother's attention from Sam to me. I was amazed.

Mom: "Okay but if you make him upset Busi will kill you."

Beli: "She is already hurt that I told daddy about the beating in the farm so I will never make her hate me more."

Mom: "Your sister will never hate you."

Beli: "If you say so."

She laughed standing up.

Kian: "Thank you very much for your hospitality."

We said our goodbyes and left. Outside Beli was looking at Sam weirdly.

Sam: "What?"

Beli: "Do not what me. What did you tell mom."

Sam: "Nothing I swear baby."

I laughed at the way he was stumbling.

Beli: "Do not baby me. Sam I respect you as my brother in law and I will never go out with you because you are like a big brother to me. You are even old."

Sam: "Belinda, I swear I didn't tell her anything. I also will never talk about you to people. Age is nothing just a number I love you yes but you are still young for me to act on it now. I will wait for you."

Beli: "There won't be any waiting here."

Sam: "But baby....."

Beli: "No Sam I am not in a dating game and I will never date you even if I have feeling for you."

Sam: "So you do have feelings for me?"

She looked down and Sam smiled

Beli: "I never said that. Look please I do not want to be in trouble and if Kian marries my sister we will be family and nothing will go right if we date."

I have never seen Sam so crashed in my life and I was hurt because my brother was a good guy.

Kian: "Guys let us leave it there before all emotions get high."

Beli: "I am sorry Sam."

Sam: "I will wait for you Belinda even if it means I will wait all my life."

We laughed and Belinda went inside laughing after giving us warm hugs. I had to drive back to the apartment.

Sam: "I really wanted these feelings to go away but every time I see her at a close proximity I feel weak."

Kian: "I know what you are going through. All will be well with time."

Sam: "Enough about sob stories. What did Kay want?"

Kian: "He gave me an envelope and I haven't opened it so I do not know what is inside."

Sam: "What if he wants you to leave her daughter?"

Kian: "What?"

Sam: "You should see your face."

Kian: "What I will never let it past him. He is a strange man."

Sam: "What will you do?"

Kian: "I do not live my life with what ifs. I am marrying Busi dark or blue. I know no one can stop me even the devil himself."

He laughed

Sam: "I do not trust your soon to be father in law."

Kian: "Let him hear you say that and you will be in trouble."

Sam: "He is your father in law not mine."

Kian: "He might be yours soon who knows. If I put a word to Beli she might reconsider. You know that she loves me and trusts me. She can do anything I ask of her."

Sam: "Really."

Kian: "I do not want to die. I am still young. He scares me and when it comes to Belinda he will really kill us I do not doubt."

Sam: "Coward."

Kian: "When it comes to him I am a coward. You know what he said to me?"

Sam: "You will tell me any ways."

He laughed

Kian: "Okay party pooper. He said I am weak and it is a turn off."

We both laughed

Sam: "A turn off to whom? You don't need to turn on a man."

Kian: "I will try to toughen up when I am talking to other men. I will also stand up to my dads."

Sam: "I would like to see you try."

We both laughed.

Kian: "They will bury me alive I tell you. On a serious note I have to stand up for the likes of Fiona. I will not lose the people I love because of that. I think we were sheltered too much in the farm and I ended up losing the sense of reality I have to develop my backbone back."

Sam: "Spoken like a true man father to be."

Kian: I want Busi to see the real me and I want to protect her from now on."

Sam: "She is worth it."

Kian: "Speak of the devil."

I smiled. I knew she was going to shout at me for not waiting for her.

Busi: "Hello."

Kian: "Hay, how are you doing?"

Busi: "Are you driving back? Which means you didn't wait for me."

Kian: "Baby I wanted to but I was feeling uncomfortable because I was seating there with your mom who was scrutinising Sam and your dad who thought I was too weak and a turn off."

Busi: "Did he say that."

Kian: "Yes love he did."

Busi: "Even though I was going to reconsider forgiving you but now....."

She started crying.

Kian: "Baby, I am sorry I will drive back now."

Busi: "Do not bother. Go ahead and leave me."

Kian: "My love I am driving back now."

Busi: "I will tell Uncle Kay not to open for you."

Kian: "But....." She had dropped the call. "What just happened?"

The phone was on loud speaker.

Sam: "Welcome to fatherhood. I hope she won't be a cry baby for the rest of the remaining months."

Oh boy.

Kian: "How do you know these things?"

Sam: "I am not living in a vacuum."

Kian: "If you say so."

I said driving into the garage. When we got inside the apartment I didn't even stall because I was curious of the contents inside the envelope so was Sam. When we opened the envelope our eyes just popped.

Kian: "What the....."

Sam: "What the"

We said it in unison.....

29

“Is it what I think it is?”

Sam asked me I was dumbstruck so was he. I looked at the papers again.

Kian: “I do not know what to say I tell you.”

Sam: “He is a good guy you have to embrace the fact that he thinks the best of you no matter how much you hurt his daughter.”

Kian: “Let’s read everything even the fine prints.”

Sam: “You are right let’s read everything.” We were reading in silence. My heart was palpating as I read on I even had tears in my eyes. “You are really lucky.”

Kian: “Do you think the parents will agree on a fast track wedding?”

Sam: “The parents love Busi already so that is not an issue your worry should be the fact that Busi is still angry at you.”

Kian: “You can say that again.”

Sam: “Let me go and freshen up I am tired.”

Kian: “Okay.”

I looked at the documents again. Kay was offering me a part-time job with so many benefits but as long as I married his

daughter before the child was born. I was not disputing that I was going to make it work. I had thought about it before the fiasco. I would marry her any other day and anytime.

I called her to check if she was still mad.

Kian: "Baby, hello, are you still mad."

She giggled. Oh boy it was going to be the longest pregnancy ever.

Busi: "Who said I was mad? We are not an item remember."

Kian: "Yes ma'am."

Busi: "I am on my way."

Kian: "What do you mean?"

Busi: "I am coming there. I wanted to see you and you left before I came so I am coming."

Kian: "Okay my love. Do you want me to cook?"

Busi: "I will bring my own food because we are still not an item."

I wished time could fly because I was running out of ideas to get her back.

Kian: "Okay I am home."

Busi: "See you now."

She dropped the call and I just smiled shaking my head. Sam came while I was still in a trance.

Sam: "Why do you look lost?"

Kian: "Busi just called. She is coming over."

Sam: "I was on my way out. Please do not wait up I might sleep in Centurion."

Kian: "What?"

Sam: "My few friends and I want to go out so I wouldn't say no to an epic night and spend it with you."

Kian: "Ouch."

Sam: "It's the truth bro. So are you going to tell her about the contract?"

Kian: "I want to analyse it first and I do not want to rush into it. She has her emotions all over the place I want to get her back first and fast."

Sam: "Okay but please try to talk to her because if she is still angry there won't be a wedding."

Kian: "Tell me about it. I am trying my best."

Sam: "Well your best is not good enough. Don't forget we are driving home tomorrow. The holiday is not over."

Kian: "Yes I know and I will have to tell the parents as soon as possible."

Sam: "Good idea. Be ready by 10am I do not want to drive late."

Kian: "Yes sir." He laughed going out but I stopped him. "Your perfume is too strong."

Sam: "Since when? Are you pregnant?"

We laughed hard.

Kian: "Yes we are pregnant did you forget?"

Sam: "I am just praying to God that those morning sicknesses do not come to you because it is not a good sight at all."

Kian: "You mean to tell me that men can also get those?"

Sam: "One of the guys I worked with last year was worse. He lived on vegetables for nine months and he almost quit his job but at least our boss understood. What I saw was a sight I do not want to see anymore so I hope you won't have those too."

Kian: "I am losing my mind already. Can you just imagine if I marry her before the baby comes I will be stuck with an emotional Busi on the other hand morning sicknesses attacking me?"

Sam: "Welcome to adulthood/fatherhood."

He laughed going out while I ran to the bathroom. I was seriously vomiting and I couldn't understand it. When I was done I brushed my teeth and took a bubblegum. Busi came in just as I was about to make food.

Kian: "You were flying."

Busi: "Just shut up and kiss me."

Before I could even respond she was on top of me. She had so much hunger in her kiss. When I was about to catch my breath she unbuckled my belt then went down on me. I gasped for air because it was my first time I had only heard about it and seen it from movies. I was groaning like a bull on heat.

She was moving up and down and I was close to bursting when she came back to my mouth. She did that while undressing us. I was still paralysed to react. Before I knew it she had pushed me on top of the kitchen chair riding me like no one's business. We came at the same time hard.

Busi: "Now that I got what I came for I am leaving."

Kian: "What?"

I was really dumbstruck because I was still catching my breath. Was I in a movie or was that real?

Busi: "I will just bath and leave."

Kian: "But baby."

Busi: "We are still not together Kian."

Kian: "What just happened now? You were using me."

Busi: "Not at all daddy dearest."

She came closer still stuck naked and started kissing me again.

Kian: "So you want to make me your sex toy?"

Busi: "Kian I am very horny and your daughter is driving me to do that. If you do not want to service me then I will look for someone who will be willing without complaints. I also hear that men love pregnant women so I will be a bonus to whoever gets me."

She was serious and I felt like dying a thousand times.

Kian: "Okay come to me."

I said defeated she just smiled and before we knew it we were on round three.

Busi: "Thank you very much I will be on my way."

Kian: "But baby....."

Busi: "You hurt me Kian do not think because your daughter wants you I want you too. I am still hurting so let me deal with this my own way."

Kian: "I understand. For what is worth I am so sorry and I was hoping that we fix things before she is born and hopefully you will be Mrs Me by then."

I was saying it randomly but I saw a smile at the corner of her eyes although she was trying to hide it. She went to the bathroom and I followed her because we were in our bedroom then.

Kian: "Busi, my chuckle dove. I love you and I will never not in a million years will I ever defy you my wife. You and Kialla are my future and life."

She smiled.

Busi: "Baby I have forgiven you so stop apologising let me heal please."

Kian: "Okay my love I will not pressure you."

Busi: "Who gave you permission to call me "love"?"

I just kept quiet because her tears were threatening.

Kian: "May I scrub your back?"

Busi: "If you want to die."

I just smiled and let her be. I made food when I gave her she declined saying she was nauseas. I took her to her car at least

she hugged me and kissed me. When I got inside I called Ghost because I missed him too much.

Ghost: "Then he remembers me."

I laughed

Kian: "You know that international calls are expensive right?"

Ghost: "An initiative is the only thing needed."

He just dropped the call. I was really having a bad day people dropping me and.then he called me.

Ghost: "I am saving your airtime then. All I wanted was for you to call first."

Kian: "I wouldn't have managed because I haven't rested in days."

Ghost: "Why? What is happening there? I leave you for a few hours and you are breaking down. Don't worry I will fix it all."

I just laughed because I had missed that.

Kian: "How are you going to fix it when you don't even know what to fix."

Ghost: "I know that you will eventually tell me so out with it." I laughed and told him everything. "I wish I were there so that I could slap the farm boy tendencies out of you."

Kian: "Why would you do that?"

Ghost: "Because I can and I will."

Kian: "Let's be serious here."

Ghost: "I am serious and I will give you a slap first thing when I see you."

Kian: "Let's be serious here. So do you think I should take the job?"

Ghost: "I am serious too and yes I think it's a good idea but the final decision lies with you at the end of the day. Kay was very lenient on you I was going to murder you and then give you a job afterwards."

Kian: "How was I going to work when I was dead?"

Ghost: "Exactly my point. If you are dead then problem solved. We will make another you. Isn't it you said your mom is back so they can do the magic trick they did before you came along and walla another you will be created?"

Kian: "I missed your craziness."

Ghost: "I am coming soon because when the results are out I need to take them somewhere for my other scholarship."

Kian: "Hopefully you will come to the farm."

Ghost: "I don't want to work like a slave."

Kian: "Lazy bum."

We both laughed. We ended up talking half of the evening. If you thought he had forgotten about slapping me then you thought wrong because he kept reminding me that he owed me a big slap. I made a quick snack called my babies and slept.

To his word Sam was ready by morning waiting for me to finish.

Sam: "I told you to wake up early."

Kian: "I did but I was nauseas the whole time. I think what you said scared me and what Busi did make it worse."

Sam: "What did she do?" I told him everything. "Why would you be angry when you got serviced?"

Kian: "More like being used."

Sam: "Same difference."

Kian: "You are mad. I talked to her this morning she is sad that I am going back to the farm but she still wants to take time apart."

Sam: "Busi is not a petty person the hormones are playing a bigger role here so let us go home and solve this thing first."

Kian: "Okay bro, all I want is to be back with my girls and hopefully soon."

Sam: "It will happen because I think the family will agree on the marriage thing."

Kian: "I was born ready to marry this woman."

Sam: "That's my boy, now cheer up all will be well."

We drove to the farm. I was calling Busi every hour to make sure she was okay and she was getting better. She could even crack jokes here and there. She was back to being herself.

When I got home I spoke to pa first.

Kian: "So what do you think?"

Pa: "This is a fair deal. You are going to gain experience because it is your field of work. These people really see you fit to be part of their family. Grab this with both hands. What I can do is sell some of the stock and make sure she gets the wedding she deserves."

I had tears in my eyes.

Kian: "You would do that for me?"

Pa: "Kian, you are my only son making you happy is my number one priority. I would be happy to see you happy in life. I live for you infact we are now old we live for you kids. Junior is getting married April next year so we will have to make sure we balance both weddings."

Kian: "Thank you very much. I will make you proud. When I chose to do marketing and office administration I never

thought things will lead to this life but I am glad because Kay says if I do well the company will hire me permanently.”

Pa: “Will you be okay working for your in-laws?”

Kian: “It is his friend’s company which has branches in Durban too so I can move if I want. He even stated it in the contract.”

Pa: “I will support any your decisions because I trust in you.”

Kian: “Thank you very much.”

When we were done Busi called me, she was down and she said she missed me. She wanted to see me. I was glad the pregnancy wanted me more than ever it was going to make my job easy. I dropped the call to start on dinner when I heard a knock. Pa was out with baba Khumalo so I went to check the door.

Then

30

“Ma”

It came as a whisper because that was a surprise to see her standing there.

Ma: “Kian.” Words just left me I couldn’t even say a word. “Are you going to invite me in?”

Kian: “Sorry come in.”

I let her in before I closed the door I checked if my dad or anyone was nearby but there was no one even the bakkie was not there being a holiday it meant they had gone for their drinking spree.

Ma: “You and your pa didn’t change much in this room.” She said entering the sitting room. I just sat opposite her quietly because I didn’t know what to say. “I know you are angry at me and you want answers.”

Kian: “You are wrong I am not angry at you; I have made peace with the fact that you were absent. I just need answers.”

Ma: “You are really not mad?”

Kian: “I was more hurt than mad. I thought maybe you left me too because I was a bad kid. When I asked pa he never said much after his breakdown.”

Ma: "I am sorry for the other day."

Kian: "Is that the only thing you are sorry about?"

Ma: "Yes."

Kian: "So you are not sorry that you left me?"

Ma: "Never, it was the best decision I ever made in my life."

Kian: "Why if I may ask because I might have needed a mother and a mother's love."

Ma: "Trust me when I say it was the best decision ever. Your pa groomed you well and you have his heart which is forgiving and doesn't carry any grudges."

Kian: "....."

I truly didn't know what to say because I really was not sure I followed in her tale.

Ma: "You had a home here and a loving family. I do not regret leaving you here because you were taught well. The humanity here is out of this world. Never in my wildest dream would I have thought that the Khumalos and Langas would be part of the family. Mostly because of the times we grew up in and secondly because I was hoping your pa's family or friends were going to help him. I left here because I was young and I loved your pa but not as much as I loved travelling and independence. Your pa was not always like this. Khumalo changed him and I

think for the best. He was shallow and he lacked adventure. No offence but....”

Kian: “None taken because we are past that stage now we have moved on.”

Ma: “Okay. I was attracted by the other life hence I told him but he never listened. That is one thing that he lacked back then but I believed years made him grow up not grow old. Living in the farm doesn’t mean that one has to be enclosed here.

You also grew up here you definitely know that there are times when time is on stand still because the harvest will be down and there is less work. So when I suggested we took a time out he would make an excuse after another. I got bored to the core. When Bernard came along I was over the moon. We were only friends when we left here but we developed feeling along the way so I thought. Travelling made me happy all the times and I was not willing to turn you into a drifter because such life is never good for kids. I never had other kids for that reason.

When your pa sent the divorce papers I was hurt because somehow I loved him more than I ever loved myself so I lost myself. I was hoping when the phase of defying pass I was going to come back. When I tried coming home I saw how happy you were and it made me sad to take away that happiness. I left the same night and never looked back again. The second time around I learnt to live without you two.”

Kian: "So you came."

Ma: "Yes I did you were in high school but I felt I was not needed and I was going to disturb your peace. I asked your ouma never to say anything. Pa was still alive he thought it was a good idea because I had messed up your lives more than expected."

Drifters are home schooling their kids and they become drifters themselves. There is never another option unlike here you have other options in life."

Kian: "Why did you not try to fix things with pa?"

Ma: "I tried countless times but never succeeded. We wanted different things. In fact we wanted similar things but he never compromised because life revolves, things change but he didn't want to revolve. I hear that you are going to be a father. If you marry her please try to be a better man. I am not saying your pa was never a better man but try to see things in your wife's eyes because once you get married you become one. Learn to tell her everything. Your pa kept a number of things from me it destroyed us before Bernard even came along."

That hit home; which meant that I was my father's son. I needed to open up to Busi starting with the contract. Kay might think I was being a sissy but I was not going to lose my woman because of silly mistakes. I was not saying my ma was right for

leaving but I was objective about the situation it was not my place.

Kian: "I hear you. So is there any chance that you can go back to pa?"

Ma: "Never."

Kian: "Why if I may ask?"

Ma: "I will be coming for wrong reasons and I do not love him that way anymore. He will always be the love of my life but I will never be the wife he wanted and expected. I love him enough not to mess up his life. We spoke and he forgave me. I have a house in Limpopo which Bernard doesn't know about so I am retiring there because he still wants to travel some more but my health doesn't allow me. Besides he is too selfish he has already moved on with a young vibrant and healthy woman. "

Kian: "What seems to be the problem?"

Ma: "I have a lung problem but now the doctor cleared me after the operation so I am free to go back to my life but I chose to relax and enjoy the peace and quiet."

Kian: "So will you not be lonely?"

Ma: "Not at all. I have a house keeper who has a family so I am planning to stay with them as long as I could."

Kian: "Okay. So where does this leaves us. I mean you, Busi, me and Kialla?"

Ma: "Who?"

Kian: "If my wife gives birth to a girl she is going to be Kialla."

Ma: "Mmmmm wife."

We both laughed. For the first time I felt connected to a mother I never got the chance to know. She had a beautiful smile.

Kian: "We are waiting for the date only because the father charged pa, baba and tata damages only he said they were too mixed to put too much time into these culture nity ditties. If you ask me I think it's because they are too rich."

We both laughed. I couldn't believe that I was gossiping about my in laws with my ma. Who would have thought of that happening?

Ma: "I am happy if you are happy. We will take it slowly because I still have to forgive myself first before I move on. I will leave my phone number and home address you are free to come anytime any day."

Kian: "I will. Look at my wife."

I was very eager to show her, I gave her my phone. She was smiling at the pictures. Busi was a philanthropist photographer; don't tell her because she will cry on me. There were descent

pictures the ones for our eyes only were on the laptop. She was still glued on the phone when I went to make something to snack on for us. We snacked chatting. It was good and I felt complete. It was time to move on and be happy. She left when it was late.

When she left I cooked for pa because no matter how drunk he was he ate at home and he wanted his food more than anything. When I was done I composed myself to call Busi.

Busi: "Hello."

Kian: "Baby, are you already sleeping this early?"

Busi: "If it's not this daughter of yours troubling me it's the father harassing me."

Kian: "We are sorry mommy for troubling you."

Busi: "What do you want Kian?"

Kian: "Baby

Advertisement

I have something to tell you."

Busi: "This better be good Kian because I will kill myself, kill you and your daughter."

Kian: "Baby, how are you going to kill us when you are already dead?"

I was laughing and she laughed too.

Busi: "Try me and you will see how possible it is."

Kian: "I won't my love because we still need you more than ever."

Busi: "You better."

I told her everything about the contract and the wedding.

Kian: "All I am asking for is for you to forgive me please then we will take it from there. "

Busi: "I told you I forgave you a long time ago."

Kian: "But baby....."

Busi: "I miss you too and I miss us. I cannot stay mad at you forever even if I tried. I found myself smiling alone when I was thinking about you. I love you Kian and please let it be our last time fighting."

I screamed

Kian: "But baby, how can you say last time fighting b....."

Busi: "Do not tempt me Kian."

I laughed as she giggled.

Kian: "If we fight then it will be because of changing a nappy or those small things."

Busi: "Good. So when am I changing my surname?"

I felt like I was floating. I had waited long to hear those words.

Kian: "I love you very much I wish you were here I was going to do things to you wh....."

She was giggling

Busi: "Do not start with me. While we are on confession time I have a confession to make."

Kian: "Do not tell me you have a boyfriend."

She giggled.

Busi: "No never, remember you are the one who corrupted me so it is your job to uncorrupt me."

I laughed

Kian: "My love there is no such word as uncorrupt. Okay out with the confession."

Busi: "When I came yesterday I used your daughter as an excuse I wanted to make sure I get some but I didn't know how to do it."

Kian: "You really are corrupt."

She giggled

Busi: "You are the one who corrupted me here, hellooooo."

Kian: "I wonder how my daughter will survive when she is already being used at this early stage."

Busi: "But baby....."

She was sniffing. Oh God help me now. I was saying to myself.

Kian: "I am sorry my peaches you are not using her then."

Busi: "I miss you now."

Kian: "Why don't you come and visit the day after tomorrow?"

Busi: "Really?"

Kian: "Yes really. Soon we will be husband and wife so you have to get used to that. While on the issue; when do you want us to make it official?"

Busi: "Tomorrow."

Kian: "Baby, be serious."

Busi: "I am."

We both laughed.

Kian: "You know we have to prepare and invite people."

Busi: "Okay let us discuss when I visit you."

Kian: "Good idea and thank you for giving us another chance."

Busi: "It's the only chance you get. If you mess up I will divorce you and marry ghost."

We laughed

Kian: "Nono will kill you. Ghost is already planning the honeymoon as we speak."

Busi: "I miss him."

Kian: "That makes the two of us."

Busi: "We have a doctor's appointment next week will you manage to come?"

Kian: "Hell yah. You don't need to ask just give me all the dates."

She giggled

Busi: "You are really excited. I hope the excitement will spill to the waking up at night."

Kian: "This is our first child and yes I will be there all the step of the way that's why we need to get married soon."

Busi: "Hence I said tomorrow."

We both laughed.

Kian: "I was with my mom earlier on."

Busi: “Really? Are you okay? How did it happen? What did she want?”

Kian: “One question at a time, my love.” She giggled; I told her everything she was emotional as usual I hated the emotional part of the pregnancy. “You will be sick if you keep on crying.”

Busi: “I am sorry. I can’t help it.”

Kian: “You need to give birth now.”

Busi: “Not happening we still need to bake the ban.”

We laughed hard. We spoke for a long time till I heard her snoring. I sang for my daughter and dropped the call. Pa came in the early hours. I slept till late, I was really tired. At least I had fixed things with Busi. I was ecstatic.....

31

Things were a bit weird but in a good way. For the first time I was free when I talked to ma and I felt reborn.

Pa: "Why are you smiling alone?"

I laughed

Kian: "Good morning to you too pa."

Pa: "There is nothing good about this morning. I just want to sleep some more today."

Kian: "You drink too much with baba. Are you fishes?"

Pa: "We are saving water. It has become a scarce commodity if you haven't noticed?"

I laughed hard.

Kian: "Tell that to the tractor that is waiting for you."

Pa: "I am taking a holiday."

Kian: "Go and sleep then before you mess up things."

Pa: "Wake me up after an hour please."

Kian: "Okay. Before you go I have something to tell you."

Pa: "I hope you haven't messed up again because I am ready to adopt Busi and disown you."

Kian: "What happened to the love?"

We both laughed

Pa: "I am waiting."

Kian: "Ma was here yesterday. We talked a lot she told me her side of the story and I understand her."

Pa: "I told you to give her a chance because I listened to her and all is forgiven. It was not easy for me I was angry it took me years but I am good now."

Kian: "Yes pa I also found closure."

Pa: "Does she know that you are going to be a pa soon?"

Kian: "Yes she does, we spent the rest of the evening talking about her and showing her pictures of Busi. She seemed happy but she voiced her opinions about the whole situation."

He laughed but I was confused.

Pa: "That is your ma for you."

Kian: "I haven't even told you what she was saying."

Pa: "I know because she was the love of my life remember. She would have loved for you to get married first before knocking her. She was and still is old fashioned."

We both laughed

Kian: “Yes and I felt guilty but some of the things she voiced out were true though. She was going to be a good mother. I wish she never left and she never judge herself that much.”

Pa: “There is a reason for everything if your ma never left we wouldn’t even have this big happy family because we would be stuck in a stereotyped world.”

He was right I wouldn’t trade my family for anything. Ma leaving us was a blessing in disguise I was going to embrace the moments I was given with her. We had our second chance so we were going to utilise it.

Kian: “You are right on that one. At least she loves Busi, she says I am smitten.”

Pa: “I have seen it a long time ago.”

Kian: “Pa” He laughed. “You will be glad to learn that the wedding is on Busi and I talked a lot last night and she is even ready to marry me tomorrow.” He whistled taking out his phone. “What are you doing?”

Pa: “Calling Mdue and Langa so that we can go ahead with the cattle sell.”

Kian: “Pa.”

Pa: “No Kian we might not have the same amount of money they have but we will give you kids the weddings you deserve.

We might have struggled in the past but now it's time to let what we worked for go to good use. We are selling the cattle for both weddings. Junior is getting married next year April as for you it is up to you."

Kian: "Thank you pa."

Pa: "Let me call these grumpies."

We laughed

Kian: "You are the grumpy leader. I will be in the field if you need me. Should I come and wake you up then after an hour?"

Pa: "Who said I am sleeping?"

Kian: "Here we go again."

Pa: "Do not be a hater. I will need to sort out this fast. You know that they don't just buy the cattle when you click your finger. We have to make sure that they are up to standard if we want to make profit."

Kian: "I understand. I will be in the fields."

I left calling my babies on the way out.

Busi: "Baby I am driving today I can't wait."

Kian: "Hello to you too my angel."

She giggled

Busi: "Baby, I was angry at you and we missed a number of opportunities to be together so I am driving today."

Kian: "I will be waiting but who are you driving with?"

Busi: "I am coming with Bran because he wants to see the farm too."

Kian: "What would you like me to do for him?"

Busi: "Nothing, he will be on his crashes if ever we can't use the chair."

Kian: "Okay my love, drive safely and tell Kialla to behave because I want my wife in one piece."

She giggled and I just smiled

Busi: "You will have to tell her yourself when we get there."

Kian: "I love you my babies and I would get a beating again if ever it means I will be with you forever."

Busi: "No one is beating you. They will have to answer to me."

I laughed

Kian: "My sexy protective mama."

Busi: "Do not forget that."

Kian: "Never not in a million years. I love you baby."

Busi: "I love you more."

I was over the moon. I had never known such feeling and such happiness. Even when I was with Fiona I never felt that way but then why was I comparing where there was no comparison at all? Busi was my sanity in an insane world; she was my calm in a stormy day. I smiled alone as I started the tractor.

Fiona never loved the farm she always talked about buying a house in the city becoming rich and famous

Advertisement

working in a co-operate company with a fat cheque at the end of the month. Busi had told me one time that she will never complain as long as we are together. She only wanted to be with me and she meant it because often actions speak louder than words.

I took longer in the fields because there was a lot to be done. I only realised it when I saw Nono bringing food for me.

Nono: "Making sure that you are a man who provides for his family?"

Kian: "Nono do you have a death wish."

Nono: "Ghost will kill you."

Kian: "Are you guys really an item?"

I was beginning to believe it was not a joke anymore.

Nono: "We want to try it but from a friend zone first."

Kian: "Ghost is just a baby and he is never serious about anything."

Nono: "I know he is a little younger than me but age is a number. I like him a lot and I was hoping you would be the first one considering that you are my close brother."

Kian: "I am not disputing anything my love. I am just saying he needs some growing up first and he is below the legal age how are you going to marry him?"

We laughed

Nono: "We are not even in the marriage stage yet bro. You worry too much. Ghost and I have the connection yes but we are getting to know each other nothing hectic we have the same dreams and I have never met anyone like that since I travelled so it is worth a try."

Kian: "I will support you as long as you won't hurt each other. I have learnt the hard way I don't even want to dream about hurting her because it might become real."

We both laughed.

Nono: "You really love her."

Kian: "She is my wife and the mother of my kids."

Nono: "Wowowowo back up a bit since when?"

Kian: "She agreed to be my wife as in the when you will have to ask her yourself in a few hours."

Nono: "She is coming here?"

Kian: "Yes."

She had a beautiful smile plastered on her face it made me smile because it was safe to say Busi was not chosen by me but by my family too and it made me happy.

Nono: "I can't wait."

Kian: "Surprisingly you never approved of Fiona."

Nono: "Fiona who?"

She said it with that voice accompanied by attitude. I just laughed because I was teasing her. She never got along with Fiona and they never hid the fact that they hated each other.

Kian: "I am not saying anything, never getting involved."

Nono: "Good for you. I hope she will listen to my proposal."

Kian: "What proposal."

Nono: "Between me and her."

I laughed because I knew better never to question her. After eating we went home together I had to leave the tractor there.

When I had just finished bathing I heard noises and I knew there were people at home. Tata Langa never disappoints with his high pitched voice I smiled thinking to myself.

When I got there the whole family was there; there was no space for me to even sit.

Mr Langa: "We came to welcome our daughter in law."

Kian: "Nono!!"

Nono: "I was so excited bro it just slipped."

Pa: "Why didn't you tell me?"

Kian: "She only called when I was in the fields so I was going to tell you when I got back but it seems the little bird sang loudly."

I lied because I was dismissing him.

Nono: "Sorry I was very excited I can't wait."

Mrs Khumalo: "I hear that we have to prepare for the wedding."

Junior: "Here I was thinking I will be the first to tie the knot."

Sam: "You snooze you lose I might even bit you all to it."

We all laughed

Pa: "In your dreams. We should take you to the prophet because our witch doctor is weak to change you."

Kian: "In your face dude."

Sam: "Not funny."

We were all laughing when the car pulled up in the driveway. I was excited because she really came. I couldn't even get the time to hug her because she was the centre of attraction. For the first time since I was in her life I felt jealous and neglected.

Busi: "I am sorry love I couldn't break free."

She said when I was helping her with their bags in their room. Parents refused point blank for us to share the room. Baba Khumalo and his strict and backwards ways but I was going to make a plan.

Kian: "It's okay love."

Busi: "So I was thinking that we get married the last week of December."

Kian: "As in two weeks time?"

Busi: "Yes love, are you not happy?"

Kian: "I am more than happy but I was thinking it will take long for you to have your dream wedding."

Busi: "I am not a fussy person I thought you would have noticed by now?"

Kian: "Whatever my queen wants my queen will get."

Busi: "Thank you very much."

She came rushing to hug me tight. I was more than in love. We kissed and she broke it.

Busi: "Let me call my parents. They will be over the moon. So when are you starting at your new job?"

Kian: "I will start in March that's what the contract said."

Busi: "We will have time for our honey moon then."

She smiled taking a phone calling her parents I just smiled going to the others to tell them about the wedding. The preparations started and everyone was more than happy.

Kay and his wife were frequent visitors from then on because their princess had decided she wanted to get married in a barn. What can I say what their princess wanted she always got. She was my queen so I wasn't complaining.

I have never seen my pa or let me say my parents, all of them that happy, it was magical. My ma was also hands on which made my heart swell with joy.

Kay was still hard on me but he hid it well when my family was around. I wasn't complaining because he had hinted that I made her princess happy. Busi was busy in Johannesburg with the preparations I was missing her like crazy. Finally the day came and I was a nervous wreck.

Pa: "I am proud of you my boy."

Kian: "Thank you pa. It is all because of the way I was brought up."

I was shaking a lot. Those who have stood at the altar before will vouch for me that it is not a child's play up there.

When she came in wearing her cream-white dress without a veil apparently because she was not pure anymore but it didn't matter I just felt like running to her. Brandon was playing the piano and singing, boy he sang like an angel.

The pastor began with a greeting and prayer.

When he asked if there was anyone with a reason why we could not be joined together there was quite. Then.....

Busi: "I am sorry, I can't do this I....."

What the

32

I was really panicking and I felt a sting in my heart.

Kian: "Baby."

There was commotion and she was feeling too emotional that's when I realised that something was not right.

Kay and Portia rushed to us.

Kay: "Princess how could you."

Kian: "Not now Kay."

Kay: "Was I talking to you?"

Kian: "I said not now because she is not okay."

Kay: "How would you....."

Portia: "Enough you two can't you see Busi is crying."

That is when we turned. The speed of lightning had nothing on us.

Busi: "Mom I told you I won't be able to do this."

Kian: "To do what my love?"

Busi: "This."

She turned her mother had an apologetic look plastered on her face.

Kian: "Can we be excused a little?"

Ma: "I am coming with you."

Portia: "Come."

I didn't wait for a response I just carried her out of the barn. Kay looked at me and just shook his head smiling.

Kian: "You are heavy now my love."

She buried her face in my chest and giggled.

Kay: "I want to see the witchdoctor who fixed this moron for you Busi. He is not normal."

Ma: "I wanted to ask the same."

We laughed

Portia: "Leave my kids alone. As for you Kay I am leaving you here in the farm."

Kay: "Sorry ma'am."

Kian: "Whose witchdoctor is strong now?"

We laughed when we got in the house I placed her on the kitchen chair.

Kian: "Talk to me."

Portia: "I know where the problem is. I am sorry Busi I thought it was not too tight."

Busi: "I told you mommy that I will not handle it. The baby is not going to breath easily."

Kian: "The what? What is happening to my baby? Please stop talking in riddles."

Busi: "Mom made this dress tight so I cannot breathe if I try talking I feel like fainting."

Kay: "So what are we waiting for?"

Kian: "Yes what are we waiting for?"

Ma: "Let us fix this."

I carried her again to the bedroom and left them there fixing her. To be honest I was thinking she wanted to change her mind. A lot was running in my mind thinking she was punishing me for the Fiona issue.

Kay: "I was hoping she was changing her mind."

He was laughing at me.

Kian: "I would have never survived."

Kay: "I would have exhumed you just to laugh in your face."

We both laughed. This man had a very dry skewed sense of humour. After sometime her mom and my ma came out saying she was asking for me.

Kian: "Baby, are you okay?"

I said going inside the bedroom.

Busi: “I am so sorry I hope you didn’t think I was going to disappoint you today of all the days. I know I was angry at you before but I am not that petty and cruel. We are in this together remember. My mom thought that if the dress is loose I would never look beautiful for you.”

She was about to cry so I didn’t want that I just hugged her tight.

Kian: “You will always be beautiful to me. You know I would have loved you to be out of this stupid dress but people will see my property and I will end up killing someone because no one has the right except me.”

She giggled and I kissed her.

Busi: “The pastor has to give you permission first.”

Kian: “I can’t help it woman you are too gorgeous and delicate I can’t even control myself. Feel this.” I said guiding her to my manhood she just popped her eyes, “See what you do to me? Now let’s do this tigress.”

Busi: “Yes sir. My tiger, rrrraaaa.”

We laughed out loud.

Kian: “You are priceless.”

Kay: "We are still waiting for you when you are busy bonding there."

Busi: "Daddy!!"

I just laughed and took her hand.

Busi: "No you go ahead dad will walk me down the aisle again."

Kian: "mmmmmm."

Busi: "Just go."

Kian: "Okay."

I kissed her one last time and left the room. We were going to continue at least. I met Belinda by the kitchen door.

Beli: "Should we change our clothes or the wedding is still on?"

Kian: "Do not be too forward. We are continuing now come my love let's go."

We went back to the barn and people looked at me with blank eyes I just ignored them and told the pastor what was going on he laughed and told people that nothing was wrong. He explained and there was laughter and whispers. We started again, this time for real.

Busi had asked me to sight my vows not write my vows but I had been busy so I was hoping not to stammer. I said mine first.

Kian: "I know I will not always be what you want me to be. I might forget to listen or forget to share. I might not always agree. I might be wrongheaded, but I will always love you. I will always strive to be the man you believe I can be.

Without you I am nothing and with you I am more than myself. You are loved more than any metaphor can ever try to express. There will never be two who love greater than you and I. I am so excited to spend the rest of our lives together."

Kay: "That's a lie."

Mr Khumalo: "Liar."

The whole barn roared with laughter. Then I continued.

"When I am with you everything else is moved into the background. You flood my sense; you are my life, my greatest gift and my loving wife. I vow to always protect you from harm, to stand with you against your troubles and look to you when I need protection.

You look so beautiful to me today, but know that you always look beautiful to me and will always be this beautiful to me, tomorrow and the next day and the next. As gorgeous as you are right here and right now, I will only love you more and more each day. I vow that you shall be the most important person in my life."

Pa: "Amen."

Everyone laughed I just looked into Busi's eyes and wiped her tears with my thumb.

Busi: "I know you just wrote those vows in the morning. That is how much I love and know you."

Everybody laughed I just smiled at her.

Busi: "Mine are coming from my heart that's why I couldn't write them down because no amount of written vows will express my love for you. I promise to put you ahead of all others, to be by your side through thick and thin, through good times and bad times. When the rains fall and the cool breezes blow, you can count on me. You can always count on me in anything.

I remember the first day we came to close proximity you were scared but I saw something different I had been searching for. You were not pretending. You were yourself. You didn't even change your life style to impress me but you brought your true self to me and I love that about you. There is nothing fake about you. That is why I am saying down the path, through the woods, in the sundrenched fields

Advertisement

and through bitter snows. Our love will keep us safe, warm and in each other's arms.

I know we are not perfect and not even close to perfection. We have fought before I know we will fight in future but honesty above all things is what I pledge to you. My honest devotion, my honest heart and my undying love for you I will always pledge. I am not a domesticated wife as you can see but I vow to be a loving and devoted wife, without judgement, scorn but always with an open heart and mind. When you go to the fields to plant I promise to sit down in the shed and watch your handsome sexy self working.”

There was too much noise in the barn some ululating some laughing. I whispered.

Kian: “I will make love to you on top of the tractor.”

She was blushing and I smiled.

Busi: “I truly love all I know of you and long to learn more as we grow old together, falling for you a little more each day, being part of your life and connected in every way forward.”

I couldn't resist I just kissed the daylight out of her the pastor cleared his throat as people laughed

Kian: “Sorry.”

Pastor: “Now that was beautiful as they have confessed their love for each other. What more can I say?”

People: “Amen”

Pastor: "Rings please and repeat after me."

We took the ring and I started.

Kian: "I Kian Coetzee take you as my wife to be your lawfully and spiritually wedded husband, in sickness and in health in all faith and with all openness for our future together, till the end of time."

I placed the ring in her finger.

Busi: "I Busisiwe Carol Smith-Radebe take you as my husband to be your lawfully and spiritually wedded wife, in sickness and in health in all faith and with all openness for our future together, till the end of time."

Pastor: "What therefore God hath joined together let no man put asunder. You may kiss the bride."

Boy did I kiss her? Hell no I devoured her.

There was ululation and clapping in the barn

Pastor: "Ladies and gentlemen I now present to you Mr and Mrs Coetzee."

There was ululation again. I had never seen my family so happy. Pa, tata and baba had tears in their eyes although they will never admit it I am telling you for the fun part of it. Ssshhhh don't you dare tell them.

Busi's family was very big and blended I tell you. She had over a dozen grannies. Her father's mother and father, Eric's mother and Russell her husband, Belinda and Brandon's biological granny and I never knew that they were adopted from the family then Muzi's mother and father not forgetting her aunt Noe Muzi's wife mother and father. She was one blessed lady. I thought my family was blended hers was United Africa/ United Earth I tell you. Don't tell her because I do not want to be wifeless on my wedding day.

The farm got some attention because there was media. She was coming from a popular celebrity family. There were even reporters from States apparently her aunt Bolly wanted her on a cover of an international magazine I was sorry for my wife because she felt uncomfortable.

Kian: "You know I have a present for you but the hunger I have for you, baby I will tear you apart before I give you the present."

I said while we were having our first dance as Mr and Mrs. She just giggled.

Busi: "I will bite you. I missed you so much hopefully you have stamina."

Kian: "Mmmmmm I will enjoy without guilt this time around."
We both laughed. "On a serious note baby, thank you very

much for being my wife. I cannot even believe that you are mine. I pinched myself more than three times today.”

We both laughed

Busi: “I love you Kian and I do not see a future without you and Kialla.”

Kian: “So when are we going to know the gender?”

Busi: “They said next month.”

Kian: “I love you so much.”

Busi: “I love you more.”

I kissed her deeply then I heard a voice from behind.

“Get a room you two. You can’t be doing this in front of parents.”

Us: “Ghost!!”

We were both surprised.

Busi: “You came.”

Kian: “You knew?”

Ghost: “You are a hater you didn’t want me here but unfortunately for you your wife has a good heart and she loves me. Geez I sound weird when I say your wife. You really can move fast.”

Kian: "Come here man."

Ghost: "Not in front of these entire beautiful women."

We laughed

Kian: "I will tell Nono."

Busi: "Baby, leave him alone. I missed him so much."

Ghost: "I am here my love. We can even get an annulment of the marriage then you will marry me and you won't even shed a tear."

Kian: "If you have a death wish."

While we were laughing the MC announced a father-daughter I let go of my wife and watched her as she approached her dad I was just looking at her and praying to God to give me a girl. I loved girls or was it because of the relationship that Kay had with his girls. I was watching them even Belinda joined them. I was going to love her the way she was loved at home. She was my everything.

"No need to fantasise about her she is all your."

When I turned it was tata.

Mr Langa: "You do love her don't you?"

Kian: "More that I even loved life itself." We both laughed

Mr Langa: "Take care of her. You hurt her you hurt all these people around here today. So please do not disappoint us."

Kian: "Not in a million years."

My eyes drifted back to the three of them and I laughed as I saw Brandon dancing with his mom nearby. I thought it was father-daughter dance. You would swear that Brandon was able bodied the way he was so happy and vibrant. My wife was so happy and I felt so happy and at home.....

I was not going to spend the night with all those people. Some even said it point blank that they won't leave until two days was over. Why two days I wouldn't answer you even now.

"You really love this girl don't you?"

Kian: "She is not a girl Ghost. This is a woman." We laughed after sometime I felt a sting in my cheek even people near us turned. "What the hell ghost?"

Ghost: "I told you I keep my promise."

Kian: "I rectified my mistake that's why I am getting married no point of correction I married her already."

Ghost: "Well I did my job."

Kian: "How can you do that man?"

We were laughing then.

Ghost: "I have been craving to do that since I heard that you made my Busi cry."

Kian: "She is my wife."

Ghost: "We all know."

Busi: "Leave my husband alone Ghost."

Kian: "Tell him baby and look he hit me hard. My cheek is swollen and painful."

I was being dramatic I know. She suppressed a laugh and turned to ghost.

Busi: "I have had enough of people abusing my husband. This is husband abuse and on our wedding behave Ghost or else I murder you."

There was a smile in her voice I just laughed still holding my cheek.

Ghost: "Was keeping my promise remember I told you I keep my promises."

Busi: "Anyone who hit my husband will have to come through me."

Ghost: "Yes ma'am. As for you Kian I bet you are happy but I am happy too I got to hit you. I was going to die wondering how it feels like."

We laughed as he left us standing there.

Kian: "Come here."

Busi: "I am sorry he hit you baby."

Kian: "It's okay at least I don't owe him"

She laughed

Busi: "You two are funny do you know that?"

Kian: "I let him win for now. There is no way I am going to let him win next time because Kialla will never want her daddy beat up."

We laughed and she put her arms around me kissing me.

Busi: "I am tired when are we leaving?"

Kian: "We can even leave now. I told them I will not be sleeping here. We are flying tonight to Cape Town."

Busi: "I am not sure they will allow us look at me my condition will be questioned."

Kian: "You should know by now that your dad would do anything for his princess. Apparently one of his old contacts is flying to the farm to take us there."

Busi: "Don't we need landing permission or something?"

Kian: "Do not ask me my love because I do not have all the answers all I need now is to bury myself in your warm body because I really missed you." She was so flashed and I loved it. "You are still blushing. I am now your husband. The pastor gave you permission to do as you please so do not be shy."

She giggled

Busi: "I will try. You know I have to get used to this."

Kian: "I am glad to teach you and to take your hand in all the steps of the way."

Busi: "Thank you Mr Coetzee I love you."

Kian: "No, thank you. I love you more Mrs Coetzee and let us get out of here."

She giggled while I took her hand going to tell the parents that we wanted to leave.

Kay: "Please take care of my baby Kian because....."

Portia: "Yah, yah, yah, we definitely know my love but no more threats because according to the law she is not a Radebe anymore so you cannot use that card its existence is not relevant anymore."

Everyone laughed looking at those two.

Kay: "My love she will always be our little girl."

Portia: "I know that but soon she will be a mother too. So you did a great job my love. You were and you still are a great dad so relax or else you will have grey hair and die on me. I am still young to be a widow."

Ghost: "I will take over don't worry Mrs P."

We all laughed hard

Kay: "You are this close to dying. First you slap my son in law at his wedding and then you want to take my wife."

Ghost: "It is allowed to dream."

Kay: "But that slap. Touch my blood I wish it was my hand that did that."

They laughed and fist bumped Nono was just shaking her head.

Pa: "Let us leave them to go and celebrate."

Mr Langa: "I was going to say use protection because I do not want to be a granny but well I am already a granny now."

Everyone laughed but Busi hid her face with her hands she was flashed. I laughed at her.

Mr Khumalo: "Take care of your family and come back in one piece."

They said what they needed to say then we changed and left on a private jet. Busi seemed uneasy, she kept touching her belly.

Kian: "We will be fine my love."

Busi: "I know I guess I am being a mother. I understand why my mom was so fussy about us. Now all I want to do is protect our daughter."

Kian: "The feeling is mutual my love I feel like I am going to kill a number of people who would harm my baby."

She laughed at me.

Busi: "Yet you were saying dad is over reacting."

Kian: "I now understand where he is coming from. You seem tired my love rest a little. Come sleep here my love."

I let her rest on top of me. I looked at her and wondered how could one ever love someone this much. I was not in any drug I was neither intoxicated nor high I was just sober and madly in love with my wife. The baby was a bonus for me. I would have loved her till the end of time without Kialla.

As a man I was going to make mistakes as I had made mistakes before but I was going to make sure I love her deeper and right. Loving someone is not easy when one has so many flaws but I was going to make sure the flaws were not going to be my obstacle.

Busi: "What are you thinking about?"

I was brought back to life by my wife. Yes my wife. It sounded weird yet it felt so good in my heart and my tongue had a sweet taste.

Kian: "I was just thinking about how I became so lucky to have you."

Busi: "I am the lucky one"

Advertisement

you are really loving me right and you made me change my life. Who knows I was going to be all alone old and grey. I honestly do not think I will ever love anyone the way I love you. Let us stay this way.”

Kian: “Always my love. Do you know I used to wonder why baba and tata loved their wives so much? I used to think it was not normal because I heard different stories from my classmates. I would sometimes think this black magic about bewitching a husband existed.”

We laughed hard and she pinched me in the process.

Kian: “Ouch my love.”

Busi: “So you are saying I put a love potion for you?”

Kian: “Did you?”

We both laughed

Busi: “You didn’t have to ask because you ate it yourself. Petticoat government works tata was right.”

Kian: “Eew, so you mean to tell me he meant that? You think my parents do go down there you know.”

My blood was boiling when I thought of that.

Busi: "You don't have to think that far about the parents. To answer your question I think what you do to your wife they also do to theirs."

Kian: "I am so uncomfortable let's talk about me being under the petticoat government. When can I do that? I can make you cum before we land."

Busi: "I am excited as we speak."

Kian: "That's my girl. I want to make sure I keep my wife happy."

Before she could reply I got under her skirt and gave her pleasure. She came into my face and I was bulging in my pants with excitement. I came to her mouth and kissed her deeply.

Kian: "I love you my wife."

She giggled.

Busi: "I love you my husband."

When she was about to give me pleasure too, the pilot announced our landing.

Busi: "Not fair."

Kian: "Party pooper."

We said it in unison and then we laughed at ourselves.

Kian: "We are a weird couple."

Busi: "I love your weirdness my king."

Kian: "I love you my queen and after feeding you my babies I will have to get fed too because I am hungry with an appetite to feed a lion."

She was flashed and I was happy because I was going to ravish her. When we landed there was a car waiting for us. Kay really outdid himself but I was going to take over. There was nothing diminishing like waiting and watching while your woman was being taken care of. Even by her father. I wanted to take care of my family like pa, baba and tata taught me. I was going to start at my new job so it was going to be easy. I was also doing well in sports with a possibility of playing professionally so I was going to be fine. I wasn't being ungrateful but I felt I needed to take care of my family. No man in his right mind would permit to being a kept man.

Busi: "This is amazing."

Kian: "Wait till I take you to the honeymoon."

She was confused.

Busi: "What are you talking about? Are we not on our honeymoon?"

Kian: "Love this is just a weekend away when the baby comes we will make sure that we take our proper honeymoon all

expenses paid for by your husband. Anywhere in the world you are dreaming of.”

She smiled from ear to ear. It made me lose myself a bit.

Busi: “You are full of surprises.”

Kian: “I wish I could afford to.....”

Busi: “Ssshhhhh I love you as you are. No amounts of money or material things will replace the love you have for me it makes me love you more.”

Kian: “Come here.”

I took her to my arms and kissed her. I just wanted to kiss her a little but the kiss got heated up.

Busi: “Please do not stop.”

Her voice was pleading but too sexy I lost all senses and deepened the kiss.

Kian: “I will not be able to stop my love.”

Busi: “I want more. We will do everything later. I want you, the baby wants you.”

We both laughed

Kian: “Do not use Kialla.”

Busi: “Stop talking and kiss your wife.”

I didn't wait I picked her up and placed her on the bed. I didn't have time to admire the room my mind was on what I was doing.

Kian: "You are beautiful my wife do you know that?"

I said after removing her t-shirt and tossing it away moving to the bra. She became all shy and I lifted her face with my index finger. I looked at her vulnerable eyes and I French kissed her. I was so in love with my wife.

Busi: "I love you."

I smiled

Kian: "You took my line."

I slowly stripped her stealing kisses here and there. She stripped me too; we couldn't take our hands off each other. When we were both naked I couldn't help myself I cupped her breast.

Kian: "They are growing a little."

Busi: "I will kill you."

Kian: "I love them and they are my weakness so if you are going somewhere I will just cut them off so that I can have something to hold on to."

Busi: "How will Kialla feed?"

Kian: “Baby, I love my daughter do not get me wrong but this and this is my food.”

I said going to her fold. She moaned, I inserted my middle finger and she went over the roof. My other hand was busy with her twins simultaneously I really loved her breasts. She grabbed my manhood and I groaned. I smashed my lips into hers while I was still playing with her. She was responding well I inserted another finger and she bit my lower lip I just smiled. The pleasure I was feeling surpassed the pain so I just continued.

Kian: “Baby we will play later I want to feel that warmth now.”

Busi: “I can’t take it anymore too. I have been starved.”

My body shoot up with excitement. ..

If I say I was happy I would be misleading you because there was no word in the vocabulary to express my feelings. Happy was an understatement I was ecstatic also an understatement by the way. Waking up next to my wife was a bonus. I looked at her sleeping, she was really beautiful. Her beauty was beyond because it emanated from within. I kissed her forehead, she stirred in her sleep. She was a very light sleeper.

Busi: "Baby."

Kian: "Sorry my love I didn't mean to wake you up. You looked so beautiful I didn't want to wake you up."

Busi: "It's okay I am hungry but I will be going back to sleep I am tired you took all my energy."

I heated up thinking about the previous night's events. She was on fire and I loved her pregnant because she was a freak. She even did things to me I didn't even know she could do. When I asked where she learnt them she told me that a woman never revealed her secrets.

I was glad because I could keep up with her. I had only been intimate with Fiona but some of these things you learn them as time goes on. I was happy that we got to explore that together. She was content and she satisfied me in bed I was hoping I was doing the same.

Busi: "What is it baby?"

I haven't realised that I had trailed.

Kian: "Nothing."

Busi: "But love you have a serious look in your face."

Kian: "I was just wondering if I do satisfy you in bed."

Busi: "Where is this coming from?"

Kian: "I love you so much I would love to keep you happy. You are keeping me happy I am satisfied you have your game on so I don't want to slacken."

She giggled and looked down.

Busi: "You are my first lover and you will be my last lover I do not know how to compare because I have only known you. What I can tell you is there is this thing that you do to me that make my body hot and want to scream on top of my lungs."

Then she closed her face with her hands. I felt relieved so much it meant I was doing a good job. Some times as men we only wanted to enjoy and forgot our partners I leant it the hard way with Fiona because she only told me when we were no longer together.

Kian: "I am glad you are satisfied and as for me I want to know who taught you those things because I will definitely kill the

man who will even look at you otherwise let alone teach you those moves.”

Busi: “Baby I will never.”

Kian: “Good because I will never survive if ever you do.”

Busi: “Relax now please feed us daddy.”

Kian: “Can you do me like you did yesterday and the whole night?”

She was blushing I was getting excited

Busi: “Feed us first and I will do more because there is more where that came from so pay up lover boy and you will be rewarded.”

Kian: “Yes ma’am.”

You should have seen me the way I ran to the hotel restaurant I was flying like Usain Bolt. You know the record he broke I broke it then broke mine too twice in a blink of an eye. When I came back she had bathed and was looking fresh.

Kian: “My love why didn’t you wait for me?”

Busi: “I was feeling stuffy and hot sorry daddy.”

Kian: “It’s okay my babies, let daddy feed you now.”

She laughed as we sat down on the bed. We were eating and chatting about different things.

Our week was over before we knew it. I was more than in love with my wife. She was glowing and happy, even Kay complimented me which was the first. He saw how happy her daughter was. When we got back home our results were out I had passed all my modules more than well. Busi and Ghost, I don't want to talk about them they always managed to get distinctions.

Ghost and I were going to be going for our attachments then finish our modules. Kay took him while I went to the friend's company so from the attachment I was going to work part time then finish everything. Busi was left with only one semester then she was going to graduate.

Her pregnancy started troubling her and I was not feeling good myself, every time I felt nauseas for a few days she would follow suite when I am okay.

Busi: "Your daughter does not want me to rest I just want to pass with flying colours and move on."

Kian: "I am sorry my love."

Yes it was confirmed we were expecting Kialla and we were both over the moon.

Busi: "I want her out some of the days because she is troubling me."

Kian: "Please hold on my love all will be well. You see I also feel sick some days."

Busi: "Please talk to her. I read in the book that it helps."

Kian: "Okay I will do it my love."

I knew better not to argue with her because we were going to fight so I hated when her hormones got the better of her.

Busi: "Talk to her now."

I smiled at the command in her voice. I knelt down and talked to her then her mother smiled I was happy.

Busi: "I am sorry for snapping at you."

Kian: "It's okay, my daughter is the culprit." She giggled. "Come daddy will make you feel better my love."

She smiled from ear to ear. My daughter loved me so much so whenever I spoke about making my wife better she will be ready for me. Even if I entered her without foreplay

she was always ready and waiting.

Busi: "I love you so much."

Kian: "Not as much as I love you."

Busi: "Not possible."

We both laughed and bonded. We were still staying in the apartment because my wife loved it, it was a few seconds drive to campus, it had three bedroom in which she had already turned to a nursery for our daughter she also could drive herself when I was unavailable. We had fought before because of the car issue. As I had stated I wanted to provide for my family.

Busi: "Baby, Kay is just helping out with the cars nothing more."

Kian: "Busi you don't understand. I am a man with pride if I let another man take care of my family how will I know my capabilities?"

Busi: "Okay my love what do you want me to do?"

Kian: "I do not like your tone."

Busi: "I am sorry my love."

She said looking down that's what I loved about her she never raised her voice no matter how angry she was and when I didn't like her tone she backed down.

Kian: "I am not trying to intimidate you my love. I am trying to show you my role as a man of the house."

Busi: "It's okay my love. Let me take my car then only. This car was a gift so I will never leave my gift."

Kian: "That is understandable then. We will use it. When you are busy I will use a taxi."

Busi: "But ba....."

Kian: "No my love."

Busi: "A metered taxi then."

Kian: "Deal."

Busi: "I love you and I hate it when we fight."

Kian: "I hate it too come here."

After our lovemaking session I left her sleeping while I went to make dinner.

Ghost: "You guys fight like kids."

Kian: "What do you mean Ghost?"

He was laughing.

Ghost: "Have you seen kids fight for toys or something?"

Kian: "Clearly no."

Ghost: "They will be like "I am not going to play with you anymore" she will be like. "I will never give you my toy." He would be like "My mommy will give me sweets and I won't give you. She will be like "Okay I am sorry take." He would be like "I don't want anymore." She will be like "My mom will come with

the pizza and KFC” he would be smiling from ear to ear and say “okay I forgive you bring the toy” then they will kiss and make up. Not literally like you two you know what I mean.”

I was dead with laughter

Kian: “You are not okay.”

Ghost: “Seriously my relationship goals are to have a kind of love like yours but when I am old and grey.”

I laughed hard.

Kian: “Why when you are old and grey?”

Ghost: “So that Nono won’t think I am a sissy.”

Kian: “So you are seriously considering a future with her?”

Ghost: “I was sure about my career goals when I was five and I am sure now that I will grow old with Nono.”

Kian: “She has a boyfriend now.”

Ghost: “That one is cheating on her and when he finally leaves I will comfort her and the rest will be history.”

Kian: “How do you know he is..... why am I even asking because I won’t get my answer.”

Ghost: “Good for you but he is the baddest man I have ever seen and Nono is only infatuated I want to kill him.”

Kian: "You are no longer a kid now so you kill you go to jail."

Ghost: "Okay yah I forgot."

I laughed at him.

Kian: "Why would you let her go to someone when you are in love with her?"

Ghost: "You should know me by now; I do not do something without an end game. I am not ready to be sexually active because it's a lot of work. Why do you think you are not supposed to have sex before the match? I will tell you anyway because it consumes your energy so all I have now is energy to play hard. As for you, tell your wife to reduce her sex drive because you will lose the spot in the team."

I laughed hard.

Kian: "Yes Coach Carter but I will never lose my wife because of a silly game."

Ghost: "My point exactly when I marry Nono I just want to settle down no more games and make love to her all day because my energy will be for her."

Kian: "You are crazy won't you be working both of you?"

Ghost: "My wife will be a kept wife and I will be working at home so that when she needs me I will be there with sexual

healing and she will be cooking in our kitchen on her birthday suit.”

Kian: “Eew, I do not want to picture my sister like that. It will haunt me all my life.”

We both laughed as I continued cooking for us. Ghost had grown and matured but he was still a child at heart. When I was about to dish up my phone rang it was an unsaved number I answered reluctantly

Kian: “Hello.”

Voice: “So you get married and have a child without informing me?”

Kian: “What the…….”

Voice: “Watch your mouth before I clean it with all the cleaning detergents in the world.”

I laughed it was Thabo, we had looked for him from my wedding preparations but all his phones were off.

Kian: “We looked for you high and low even Junior hired someone to look for you.”

Thabo: “I know my klein broer (my little brother) I was underground, they told me all about you. I am so sorry I will make it up to you. You know my job is demanding and I have to disappear from time to time.”

Kian: "What job?"

We both laughed.

Thabo: "My former job. I quit I want to be legit now. They killed most of my friend so now I want to forget about that life and change places."

I was so surprised I couldn't believe my ears the parents had waited for so long to hear him say that. All I knew was that he never told them about him quitting that life. He always confided in me and Sam.

Kian: "That would be good news I guess."

Thabo: "There is more. I am getting married but I would like to let Junior get his glory on the wedding first so I postponed mine when I heard about his wedding then I resurfaced."

Kian: "I would love to see the woman who would want to tie you down."

Thabo: "I think you will see her sooner than you think because we are relocating to Johannesburg."

Kian: "I can't wait."

Thabo: "I hear they were sluts who were terrorising your wife."

Kian: "How did you fi.....? Never mind I know you wouldn't even tell me."

Thabo: "I have eyes and ears everywhere."

Kian: "She put them in their places they don't even breathe the same air she does that's how scared of her they are?"

Thabo: "What really happened?"

After the wedding when we got back to school Fiona's chipmunks started calling Busi with threats. They used untraceable numbers but Ghost caught them. Fiona was not around she got a job offer in Namibia so she had relocated. Busi manage to give them a few slaps because of her hormones God I loved her hormones at times. Don't tell her.

Thabo: "I was going to sort them out."

Kian: "You said you have changed."

We both laughed

Thabo: "I was going to use other methods not that one."

Kian: "I don't even want to know. I am going home next weekend so hopefully I will tell the parents good news."

Thabo: "I was hoping you would."

See what I meant? He had a smile in his voice so I knew he wanted me to tell the parents hence the call.

Kian: "I will."

Thabo: "Thank you bro."

Kian: "You owe me."

Thabo: "I know."

We finished talking and I had a quite dinner with my people.

I was about to go home on a weekend with my wife then
boommmmmm....

35

The whole clan was at our apartment when I say the whole clan
I say the male species of our clan led by Sam.

Kian: “Ah.....Iw.....”

Mr Khumalo: “What? You can’t talk now?”

Mr Langa: “Are you going to let your fathers stand here?”

Kian: “Well.....”

Mr Khumalo: “Makoti.”

He said inviting himself in. My wife had run to the bedroom to
change. That’s how she was, when we went home or when the
elders came she covered her head and also dressed descent.
My parents didn’t care at all because they took her as their
daughter.

I took Sam’s hand and led him to the kitchen.

Kian: “What the.....”

Sam: “Mind your language. Before you ask or accuse me I don’t
even know how they found out about Thabo. They said he was
going to destroy your life and ruin your marriage that’s why he
is coming here.”

Kian: “Who told them about the conversation we had?”

Sam: "I will be lying if I say I know because since your call I had been busy. They ambushed me when I was going out can you imagine I was going to score today."

We laughed

Kian: "You, score, that will be the day."

Sam: "I am serious. There is this girl that I saw and I want to try my luck."

Kian: "What about your crush?"

Sam: "Not my crush, Belinda my future wife."

We laughed then we heard someone clear their throat.

Pa: "So you leave us hanging for what? To talk about women; Kian does your wife know that all you talk about i....."

Kian: "Pa."

Busi entered the kitchen laughing.

Busi: "It's okay pa I know he talks about women with his brother from time to time. I will not be bothered because he is now my husband so they can talk as long as there is no action."

Pa: "The portion you gave her must be that strong."

We laughed as we left the kitchen to the lounge.

Mr Langa: “My daughter we are not sleeping over we are coming here for business.”

Mr Khumalo: “Yes; we are here for your older brother in law.”

Busi just looked down because she knew about Thabo’s visit. He was going to stay over for the weekend while we were at home, there were people painting his apartment getting it ready for occupation.

Sam: “He is not coming till tomorrow.”

Pa: “Do not worry we spoke to him before we drove here. The movers will move his stuff next week but he is on his way.

Oh snap these old men hopefully they were not going to go gangster on him like the way they went with me. I was praying inwardly.

Mr Khumalo: “So you will excuse us while we talk to him.”

Sam: “Not happening.”

Kian: “Baba.”

We said in unison we even sounded like a choir of drunkard amateurs

Mr Langa: Do not even interfere, boys.”

When tata was that angry which meant it was serious because he was slow to anger. I just backed down but Sam tried his luck.

Sam: "Tata he has changed his life on his own and he is making an effort to reach out to the family. He even has a woman and he wants to settle down."

Mr Khumalo: "Oh, so you have spoken to him and you knew he was coming but you didn't bother to tell us?"

Sam: "Kian was driving home to tell you about....."

Pa: "Drive home taking my heavily pregnant daughter along for someone's stupidity?"

We were in trouble Busi saw that and decided to save us.

Busi: "No pa, I begged him to take me with because I missed home. I wanted to see you for the last time before Kialla came along. You know I wouldn't feel right if I would give birth without setting foot at home. My mothers wouldn't have loved that because they were still teaching me about the farm and about raising my daughter."

I saw them soften up because everyone in the family had a soft spot for my wife. She looked at me with a "you owe me" look on her face. I really owed her.

Mr Khumalo: "We hear you my daughter but we still need to talk to him."

Busi: "Nothing hectic like the last time Kian....."

Them: "No

Advertisement

no, no.....”

They said at once but they had naughty smiles plastered in their faces. I just shook my head.

Sam: “If something happens w.....”

Me Langa:”You had no right because you hid this information from us.”

Sam: “Tata I.....”

Mr Khumalo: “No we promise not to do something hectic but we will just..... you know.”

Kian: “We don’t know but we hope we won’t fight after the “talk”.”

I said air quoting the word talk. We went to and fro till we gave up. Those old men were persistent when it came to their arguments they never even once lost one from the memory I had. At least my wife softened them a little I was sure that they were going to keep their word.

To our surprise when Thabo came he wasn’t aware that the old men were around.

Thabo: “How could you.....”

Sam: "Before you even say something it seems we have been played."

Kian: "They told us that you called them in the morning."

Thabo: "You know I wouldn't even dare call them but anyway at least I don't have to postpone this. Let's do this."

Before we could go to the lounge my wife came in with a naughty pleading face.

Busi: "I think I have an idea how they found out."

Us: "What?!"

Busi: "Please do not shout at me."

She was becoming emotional.

Kian: "Sorry my love we didn't mean to."

Thabo: "It's okay my love I am not angry in a way it helped me."

Busi: "I didn't mean to I swear I was only talking to Mrs Khumalo and it slipped I guess she told her husband."

We laughed

Sam: "Welcome to the family. You don't tell the wives anything because they tell their husbands before you could even sneeze."

Busi: "Ah."

Kian: "Do not worry my love."

Mr Langa: "Hay, don't even think of letting him run away."

We cleared our throats when we saw him standing by the door. We were outside. We had no choice but to get in.

Pa: "Thabo, how are you?"

Thabo: "I am f.....i....."

Pa: "You don't even know how to talk now?"

You see no matter how tough you were when it came to the old men you would crumble. You wouldn't even tell that Thabo was once a respected gang member because he was shaking like a leaf.

Mr Khumalo: "Kian. Sam and Makoti please excuse us."

Pa removed money from his wallet.

Pa: "Go and spoil yourselves. Come back after an hour."

We knew better not to interrupt.

Busi: "So do you think they will beat him too?"

She asked when we were leaving to the mall because she wanted ice-cream. My daughter was going to be trouble.

Kian: "Do not over-think they will never hurt him."

Busi: "But they hurt you last time."

Kian: "But baby, I hurt you too last time that's why they did that to me."

Busi: "Even though they were not supposed to do that."

Sam: "Chuckle dove....."

We laughed, we had totally forgotten about him.

Kian: "I am the only one allowed to use that name."

Sam: "Whatever. Listen baby, they will not harm him. They will only remove the deception and defiance in him. Do not stress or else Kialla will stress too."

Busi: "Okay."

She was not convincing but I knew she was going to be okay. We drove the rest of the way chatting with Busi unease. We took an hour because my wife kept on ordering and changing her mind. She even took us window shopping for baby clothes.

Sam: "Busi you are going to pay."

She giggled.

Kian: "Leave my wife alone."

Sam: "How can drag two grown men for window shopping? Why are you not shopping?"

Busi: "I will come with my husband."

Sam: "Lucky me."

Kian: "Why are you saying that?"

Sam: "I won't be running around shopping, do you know how tiring shopping with a woman is?"

Kian: "Tell me about it."

Busi: "Baby!!"

Oh, oh I shouldn't have.

Kian: "I am sorry my love you are not any woman you are my beautiful wife come here."

I drew her closer to me and kissed her.

Sam: "Time out kids."

We laughed and drove back home when we got home the old men were on their toes ready to leave and Thabo had a blank expression on his face.

Sam: "Going already?"

Pa: "We were not here for fun so if our business is done then we are on our way."

Busi: "Let me serve food for you before you leave."

We had brought take aways.

Mr Khumalo: "Thank you my daughter these ones were going to leave us hungry and drive hungry all the way."

We laughed

Sam: "You have a daughter in law so we wouldn't bother because we didn't invite you here."

Mr Langa: "You have a death wish Sambulo."

Sam: "Sorry tata."

We laughed as Busi went to the kitchen to serve them I joined her for help because I saw her feet were swollen from the walking around.

Kian: "You need to rest baby."

I said kissing the back of the neck. She just morn I tickled her we giggled

Busi: "These people should go now."

I laughed

Kian: "What will you do to me when we are alone?"

Busi: "You don't want to know lover boy I have found a new weak spot."

Kian: "Mmmmm I can't wait."

Sam: "You are busy seducing each other here while elders are starving."

Busi: "Sam."

Kian: "Leave us alone get a wife."

Thabo: "Tell him."

Sam: "Let them eat and go so that you can tell us what happened."

We finished together then served them food. We also ate with them while chatting. After that they left.

Sam: "So tell us what did they do or say."

Busi: "I hope they didn't touch you."

We laughed

Thabo: "Eish....."

36

Busi: "Out with it my baby is starving."

We laughed hard.

Thabo: "There is food in the kitchen."

Busi: "Starving for details."

Sam: "Amen."

Kian: "Leave my wife and child alone."

Thabo: "What did she give you?"

Sam: "Why don't you ask what they gave each other?"

Busi: "He ate on his own."

We looked at each other with my wife and burst out with laughter.

Sam: "See what I mean they are acting like puppets."

Busi: "At least we are each other's puppets."

We laughed Thabo just shook his head.

Thabo: "Well you know the old men. We talk a lot I apologised I even told them about my future plans."

Sam: "They didn't even give you a hard time."

Thabo: "They did you know them. I stood my grounds."

Kian: "I can even picture you."

Sam: "Are you serious about quitting that life."

Thabo: "As serious as a heart attack. Look at this."

He said opening his t-shirt showing us the removed tattoos he really had none as in no tattoos available.

Sam: "I can now breathe. I always worried about you all the time I was thinking of you being stabbed to death or shot or even worse."

Thabo: "Oh that's so sweet."

Sam: "Do not even think about mocking me I am serious."

Thabo: "Okay bro I am sorry."

Kian: "So they didn't you know ah....."

Thabo: "They gave me one or two because of my previous behaviour."

Busi: "One or two what?"

Kian: "Nothing baby."

Busi: "No I am asking."

Thabo: "A few fists but I will live. They were angry mostly because I am the reason Tamara died."

Sam: "Oh snap, how did they found out?"

Thabo: "You tell me."

We were both surprised but I wouldn't let past them that maybe they had informants out there."

Busi: "Who is Tamara?"

We looked at each other with my brothers then Sam changed the topic swiftly.

Sam: "So you two are no longer going home?"

Busi was not a nosy person but I knew she was going to ask me again about Tamara. I was only glad to see that she let it slide for the time being.

Busi: "No need because it's late already but as soon as Kialla comes we will go."

Kian: "We would have air-conditioned and fixed the cars for her health."

Thabo: "Spoilt child."

Sam: "This is the first grandchild in the farm have you realised that so she is an egg."

Busi: "She is going to be the first in both sides so yes she is a magic child."

I smiled thinking about how spoilt my baby was going to be. I was going to slay dragons for her. I looked at my wife and

thought of how lucky I was and I couldn't help it I just kissed her.

Thabo: "Kids we are still here."

Sam: "Tell them."

Kian: "Whose house is this, my love?"

I said looking into my wife's eyes without even blinking.

Busi: "I believe it's ours."

Kian: "I also believe we spent a day searching for it without outside help."

Thabo: "Oho, Sam let's get out of here man."

Sam: "I am driving back to Centurion lets go clubbing and leave these love bird."

We just giggled. They packed their things and left. I carried my wife to the bedroom because she wanted to "rest" you know what I mean.

Busi: "Baby, where are you?"

Kian: "In the kitchen."

I was preparing food for her because after "resting" we really rested then I woke up and cooked something light for her. I admit I wasn't a master chef and not even close but I had a few

tricks under my name. Don't laugh hay a man got to try sometimes.

Busi: "You cooked."

Kian: "Yes and I was about to bring yours in the bedroom."

Busi: "Mmmmm thank you."

Kian: "Come here."

I said circling her waist with my hands. I kissed her passionately till I couldn't take the heat.

Busi: "I am hungry for the real food my love."

She said after breaking the kiss. I laughed as I led her to the table.

Kian: "Come my babies, daddy cooked for you."

"Mmmmm I came right on time. Wait a minute aren't you supposed to be feeding the animals and you carrying a bucket of water on your head walking bare foot."

Busi: "Amen."

Kian: "Ghost how are you too."

We laughed.

Ghost: "I thought we were going to be in the farm today."

Kian: "We, when you literally ran for your life when I invited you."

Ghost: "My woman is not there so I was not going to go there and become lonely."

Busi: "Which woman when you fed her to the wolves."

Ghost: "Never, do you know the saying about if you love a beautiful woman let her go if she comes back to you then you are the handsome one in the relationship."

We laughed hard.

Kian: "Ghost there is nothing like that."

Ghost: "Okay I am starving."

Kian: "If we were not here what were you going to do?"

Ghost: "Thank God you are here so we won't have to find out. Let's eat people while you tell me the reason for not going and it better not be because you wanted to shag some more from the morning loooooonngggg shag you had."

Us: "Ghost!"

Ghost: "I don't listen to your things if you are spookyfied by that."

We laughed

Kian: "So what does that mean?"

Ghost: "I know how newlyweds do their things then after a few years and a few kids on the equation they become boring. They will even forget that there is a word sex in the vocabulary. You will find it in the dust bin if you are lucky or in the scrap yard if you are not lucky it would have been recycled with the rubbish in the bin."

He said that digging in his food while we laughed.

Busi: "Not happening."

Ghost: "If you say so. So tell me what happened."

I told him but leaving personal details there because I believed family matters were supposed to be dealt with in the family.

Ghost: "I missed the drama."

Kian: "You didn't miss much because we also missed the drama they literally chased us away."

Ghost: "You are the weak ones I would have found a way to stay behind."

We laughed and continued with our meal. Sam drove Thabo home the following day; he took the car and left for his apartment.

Kian: "Did you even sleep you two?"

Sam: "Sleep is for babies."

Thabo: "Don't worry; he is a baby too."

They laughed I just shook my head.

Days went by and Busi was done with everything we were preparing for her graduation. Her mother had organised a surprise baby shower/ graduation party.

Portia: "Are you sure everything is in place boys."

Us: "Yes ma'am."

We laughed because if you could see us all saying ma'am in unison you could have laughed too. It was Muzi, Kay, Bran

Advertisement

Bukho, Sam and I.

Kay: "Baby, you have to relax, we will be fine don't worry."

Portia: "You say that because you will be enjoying your braai with the boys and I will be embarrassed here alone with the girls."

Kay: "Come here my love."

He said enveloping her in his arms and kissed her passionately.

Kian: "I miss my wife. I am going now."

Muzi: "Me too and these two do not have mercy on us."

We laughed.

Bran: "I am going with you Kian I miss my people too."

Kay: "What people?"

We laughed

Bran: "Busi and Kialla."

Kay: "You better be telling the truth and Kian do not corrupt my child. I married his mom when I was already old and grey."

Bukho: "Your choice." We laughed

Portia: "These kids. That's your father."

Them: "Sorry mommy." Bukho: "I am going too."

Kian: "Come on and I was thinking I will get a fewyou know before. Kay: "You are talking about my daughter Kian."

Kian: "Sorry daddy."

We laughed as I took my car keys heading for the door with Brandon and his brother on my tail. I didn't mind because I loved spending time with them especially Brendon we clicked like no body's business.

At least my wife was happy to see her siblings.

Busi: "You are busy stealing my husband's time where are you coming from."

Bukho: "Bowling sis and I won these losers owe me money."

Yew saved by Bukho but he was very sneaky because we had to give him money to pretend that we owed him. He was going to be an economist that one or was it the correct vocabulary, well I was just thinking out loud.

The day for the graduation came. I waited for my wife for a while but she was not appearing I rushed to the bedroom she was not there then I rushed to the bathroom she was there crying. Kian: "Baby, what is wrong."

Busi: "I had planned this day for a long time and it was supposed to be perfect."

Kian: "Everything is in order my love don't worry."

Busi: "No, nothing is in order. Look at me, my dress does not fit and I am bigger than an elephant."

I wanted to laugh but it was going to be insensitive.

Kian: "You will never be bigger than an elephant my love."

Busi: "I want my beautiful body back I want to look beautiful for my day."

I felt bad because I was the reason for that. I wish I had been cautious but also I would have never been waiting for Kialla.

Kian: "I am sorry my love. If I could go back I would never change anything I would only alter your graduation to be months back. You are my only reason to live. Look at me I

would be a laughing stock without you my love.” She smiled. “You see that smile. Kialla want to see that smile. Imagine she will look at your graduation pics and ask you why you were sad and what will you say? Will you tell her it is because you were making me an elephant?”

She giggled and shook her head. “Good, now be a good girl and smile for daddy.” She smiled I couldn’t resist I kissed her passionately. “Now let us do this before people think you are a chicken.” She laughed

Busi: “Okay.” Kian: “Now, that’s my girl.”

I helped her dress up and we left. The graduation ceremony went well we then drove to her house. The ladies were going to go to a hotel for the baby shower / graduation surprise. The whole clan was there from both families or let me say our United Africa. Lucky enough their house was too big.

Thabo came with his girlfriend. I was approaching him because I wanted to greet them when they both turned I got the shock of my life.

Kian: “Tamara...”

What the.

I was scared, angry confused I didn't even know how to react altogether. When I looked at her she looked confused.

Thabo: "Hay how are you doing?"

He was being dismissive, I wanted to know why.

Kian: "Thank you for coming."

Thabo: "Honey this is my brother Kian. His wife is the one who graduated today. Dude this is Zee my woman/ my fiancée soon to be and wife."

I looked for the word in my vocabulary to describe my feeling but I couldn't come up with any suitable word to describe my confusion or feelings. That was Tamara from my knowledge. What did Thabo do?

Kian: "Glad to meet you beautiful. Hope they are so many beautiful ladies in your family because I still have a few brothers lined up who are single?"

Thabo looked uncomfortable because he knew I was fishing. She shyly looked at me.

Zee: "Unfortunately I am the only child and my parents died in a tragic accident last year in Berlin. There was an attack there by the Muslim group unidentified, so my mom used to work for doctors without borders. Their car lost control while driving to

rescue the injured dad was driving; he didn't survive the impact but mom died in hospital five days later."

When she was talking I was looking at her, her mannerisms and all. I realised she was not Tamara but how. Did she have a twin or what? I just let it slide I was going to have one on one with Thabo. He can't do this to someone. That was really replacing Tamara with her replica.

Kian: "Were you adopted?"

Please don't kill me for poking but it really came out because I was curious.

Zee: "Most of the people asked me the same but no I was a test tube baby. My parents couldn't conceive naturally so they harvested her eggs and my dad's sperm, the rest is history."

She was not shy so she was definitely not Tamara but how could he do that. Even the parents will see that. While I was devising the next plan to question her, my wife approached with this beautiful lady her age if not a year or two younger.

Thabo: "Honey that is the lady of the moment."

Zee: "She is really beautiful."

Kian: "I know right."

Thabo: "She was not trying to boost your ego."

We laughed as she neared.

Busi: "I hope I am not the talk of the town."

Kian: "Not at all baby I was telling Thabo's fiancée how beautiful you are."

She blushed

Zee: "Look she is blushing too. Kian you hit a jackpot here."

Kian: "Tell me about it. Baby, are you good. Do you need....."

Busi: "I am fine my love."

Kian: "Are your feet....."

Thabo: "Honey let's get married so that I can impregnate you too maybe I will be this clingy."

We laughed and the lady with my wife laughed too.

Busi: "Leave my husband alone."

Kian: "Tell them my love. Listen baby this is Thabo's fiancée Zee, I wasn't told everything I only know that."

Thabo: "The less you know the better."

Busi: "I will know sooner you know me."

He smiled looking at me.

Kian: "Do not look at me you know she can fish on her own. She even knows my darkest secrets in which all of you do not know about."

Busi: "Baby!!!"

Kian: "So sorry love."

Busi: "I will forgive you on one condition."

Kian: "Can it wait my love to when I am rich and old."

Busi: "Never or else you will s....."

Kian: "Okay deal."

Thabo: "You don't even know what she wants."

Kian: "What she wants she will definitely get."

Zee: "Lucky her."

She said leaving and Thabo on her heels following.

Thabo: "Baby, wait up. What did I do now?"

We were left laughing.

Busi: "Baby

Advertisement

this is Daniella Cele my childhood friend."

Kian: "Oh, you never told me much about her."

Busi: “Just because mom bumped into her when she was in Cape Town recently.”

Kian: “She recognised her.”

Daniella: “More like I recognised her; not knowing Portia from Portia Smith Productions will be a taboo, I usually told my mom that I miss my friend but my dad was always over protective about me travelling alone.”

Busi: “Not forgetting your uncles.”

Daniella: “I think Carl is worst because he practically raised me with my mom before we found my dad.”

They laughed at that, okay there was a story behind that laugh.

Kian: “Well I didn’t know about P when I met Busi.”

Busi: “Just because you my husband are a unique spices.”

We laughed.

Kian: “So your family is in Cape Town?”

Busi: “Her grandfather is the one who built most of buildings there, more like he designed them and his son Brian.”

Kian: “Okay I am now jealous.”

She smiled shyly.

Daniella: “She is a little exaggerating. To answer your question I was there to study. I joined my granny and Uncle Brian in the family business although my dad would have loved for me to join the Cele Empire.”

Kian: “So you come from money.”

We laughed.

Busi: “It wasn’t always like that. Her mom Tee and Uncle Carl had been through a lot. At least they are now both married living happily ever after.”

Daniella: “It was a big struggle for the three of my uncles with drama involved.”

It seemed like an interesting story I was eager to know more.

Busi: “All relationships are like that you will find out soon.”

Daniella: “My family is over protective I think my dad will kill someone first before I get married.”

We laughed.

Kian: “Where are your parents now?”

Before she could answer Mrs P came to take them. I was left hanging hopefully Busi was going to tell me more.

Portia: “Girls it’s time to go. We need ladies’ time out.”

Busi: “Mom I am not a girl.”

Portia: "You will always be my girl."

Kian: "Baby, don't sulk, just go and enjoy. I will be waiting for you. Don't keep her till late Mrs P because she doesn't sleep much these days if she sleeps late."

Busi: "I don't want to go."

Daniella: "Come on I missed you we need to catch up."

Kian: "See you will catch up my love and I will be here waiting when you come back."

Busi: "Okay if you say so."

That was a relief because Mrs P was going to blame me. Portia just mouthed a thank you to me. I smiled and watched them leave.

Sam: "Who is that beauty?"

Kian: "Do not start."

We both laughed.

Sam: "There is no harm in complimenting God's artwork. You know I have my eye on one woman."

Kian: "She is still a baby."

Sam: "Let's leave that alone and talk about this Zee character."

Kian: “Now we are talking let’s go look for Thabo. Junior just arrived with his fiancée so this weekend is going to be lit.”

Sam: “Mrs will be on your neck.”

Kian: “Never; she is not like that these days.”

Sam: “Let’s go.”

When we got to him he was mingling with other people so we couldn’t talk to him.”

Pa: “Leave him; this is neither the place nor the time.”

Kian: “How did you.....”

Sam: “You are wasting your time asking that because they always know everything even how our minds work.”

We laughed and enjoyed before long baba Khumalo asked us to go to my apartment. I was keen to go because the party was not enjoyable as we were still stuck with so many questions.

When we arrived home Junior and Thabo were already there. Their women had gone to the baby shower venue.

Kian: “When did you get here?”

Junior: “You were just on our tail.”

Pa: “Come on, open for us and stop these cocas meetings.”

We laughed as we got inside.

Baba: “Please sit we do not have time because Makoti will be here soon. I hate to be always on your case boys. You are now grown up for this. So Thabo do you have anything to tell us?”

Thabo: “Ah.....”

Tata: “We do not have all day.”

Pa: “Didn’t we bury Tamara?”

Thabo: “We did, this one is Zinhle Pauls she grew up in Mozambique and she doesn’t even have any relations with Tamara.”

Them: “What?”

Thabo: “Yes, we met online and started chatting. I was as shocked when she came to visit.”

Baba: “Are Tamara’s parents aware of that?”

Thabo: “Yes they even went for DNA tests because they thought I was teasing them. Zee was confused but we sat down and told her the whole truth. When she visited it was too late because I was already in love with her.”

This was some messed up ish. You know those things that happened in movies. Tamara was Thabo’s fiancée. He was a good boy once but a player so one of his psycho girlfriends sent people to kill her. They were young then just after finishing

school when he started varsity. They fell madly in love and he proposed but still running after girls.

The girlfriend and the accomplice were arrested but it never brought Tamara back. Thabo joined a gang in retaliation and he never dated from then he only had sex buddies. Tamara's parents were angry at first but they softened as Thabo kept providing for them. It was never going to bring their daughter back but it was easing the financial burden for them.

Tata: "I do not have words. Is there any chance that they were both adopted?"

Thabo: "I dug even deeper and there is nothing that tires them at all."

Pa: "It must be fate."

Sam and I were just dumbstruck we didn't know what to say. This was really messed up. I can just imagine another Busi out there. As for me I was not going to go for her not in a million years. Anyway we were not the same.

Baba: "So where you telling the truth that you are engaged?"

Thabo: "Yes I am telling the truth; she really changed me; that's why I am now living a straight life."

Pa: "I hope your past ghosts are not going to haunt you and the whole family."

Thabo: "I tied all the loose ends for now I am sure that you all will be safe."

Junior: "So when is the wedding?"

Thabo: "Soon, but not before yours because we want you to enjoy your day."

We laughed

Junior: "I wasn't asking for that. I wanted to make sure that I get my leave days in order."

We talked about different things but I was worried about my wife. She hasn't called which was not like her. While I was stressing there were cars pulling outside. We went out with Sam.

Mrs P: "Sorry we took long and her phone is off she couldn't call you."

Kian: "It's okay."

Mrs P: "Are they here already?"

Kian: "Who?"

Mrs P: "Busi and Daniella. They left before me."

Kian: "What?!"

She had a panicked look and I just put my hands on my face.

Mrs P: "Daniella rode with her in the cab. They left the car at the hotel. She couldn't drive and Daniella doesn't know the place well."

Kian: "She never got here."

Sam: "When did they leave?"

Mrs P: "About an hour ago."

This was not happening. We tried both their phones.

Oh God.

I was beyond panicking even if I tried I was not getting any better. Through the panic and the confusion I didn't even realised that my family was also standing outside causing commotion.

Tata: "Let us go inside please."

Portia: "I called Kay I will have to wait for him here."

Kian: "How well do you know this Daniella character?"

Portia: "Not well enough why?"

Kian: "What if she took them?"

She wanted to laugh but when she saw how serious I was it changed to furry.

Portia: "No man, don't even entertain that idea at all. There is nothing that Daniella can do to harm Busi not in a million years."

Thabo: "I lost my fiancée because I was sceptic that one of my girlfriends could be the one responsible. When I finally looked for her it was too late they already killed her. Can you vouch for this kid with your life?"

Baba: "Boys I said inside."

His command even made Mrs P enter although she initially wanted to wait for Kay outside.

Portia: "To answer your question I can even call her family right now. She is coming from a well respected family she will never; not in a million years take Busi to harm her."

Pa: "Why are we even entertaining evil thoughts? You know your wife likes food what if she went to a restaurant and they are busy catching up they forgot about time?"

I saw relief in everyone's faces but I was not fooled. I panicked some more as I pictured my life without my wife and Kialla but nothing came to my mind, which meant my life was going to be bleak.

Kay: "What is going on?"

Okay his eyes were blood red and I knew he was panicking like I was.

Portia: "My baby is missing."

She said going to him arms and crying. People went back to the panic mode because I think somehow they were hoping Kay will bring different and better news.

Kian: "What do you think happened to them?"

Kay: "I am not sure but I will find out soo....."

His phone rang and we all froze like the Woolworth dolls waiting to advertise clothes.

Kay: "Hello."

He answered as confident as possible. We all looked at him with eager eyes then he placed it on loud speaker.

Voice: "Sir I have your daughters here they are not well the other one just passed out after telling me that I should call you. The other one was unconscious when they arrived here."

Kay: "Thank you Mrs May."

He dropped the call and no one spoke we grabbed what we could, phones, car keys jackets and ran to our cars. People just entered any cars that were available. Portia asked me to drive her car because she was panicking so her husband drove out with her. I was with my brothers and Thabo's fiancée and Junior's fiancée offered to cook while we were gone. Ghost was going to come anyway so they were going to help each other Nono was there too to help.

Thabo: "As long as they are alive all will be fine."

Kian: "I have a bad feeling. Why are they both unconscious who took them?"

Sam: "Maybe they were involved in an accident."

Junior: "You are not helping bro with the comments."

Sam: "You can comment then if you have better comments to dish out."

Junior: "You are always saying things without thinking all the time."

Sam: "If....."

Kian: "Guys!!!!"

Thabo: "You are really not helping because exchanging words won't change the situation. Let us drive in peace then when we find out what is really going on we will then decide if we can go on a talking trashy contest."

I wanted to laugh but the situation didn't permit. We arrived at the hospital in total silence. Kay was already there questioning some guy.

Kay: "How did you say it happened?"

Guy: "I was driving them but a car bumped me from the back I hit the hump hard then the pregnant one started crying. When she was crying the other one had a panic attack I heard her saying inhaler then she was gone."

Kian: "Gone as in?"

Guy: "Unconscious I drove them here through the other one's instructions."

Kay: "I told you its Busi and Daniella."

Guy: "Sorry. I checked their phones they were both off so when Busi finished panicking she told that lady there to call you."

The guy was a mess himself at least he had the decency to wait for their families to arrive than leaving them in the hospital and drive off.

Kian: "Where are they?"

Kay: "I called Muzi on my way here. He is with the doctor on call to see what is happening but Kialla might be here today."

I truly didn't know how to feel. Was I ready for this? I was panicking because I didn't know what to say.

Kian: "May I please go and see her."

Kay: "You see tha....."

Portia: "Those are his kids right there. It's his family so let him go please."

I didn't wait for him I went inside Busi was breathing on her on and was gaining consciousness slowly.

Kian: "Hay my love."

She smiled and coughed, you should have seen me running to her.

Muzi: “She is okay she just panicked. You should thank the driver who brought them in because if not she was going to lose the baby.”

Kian: “So the baby is on her way?”

Muzi: “Unfortunately yes.”

Kian: “Is it not too early?”

Muzi: “No I checked everything she is in the middle of her seventh month so babies born on the seventh month do survive.”

I rushed to her and kissed her passionately.

Busi: “She is going to be Kialla Graduation Coetzee.”

We both laughed

Kian: “No daughter of mine is going to be graduation. How are you feeling?”

Busi: “I am fine please try to get hold of Daniella’s parents they will be worried and they would know which medication to give her. Is she still unconscious?”

Kian: “I don’t know. Let me go and check.”

When I went out all the eyes were on me.

Kian: “They are fine but Kialla will be coming today.” There was relief and worry mixed on their faces. “Do not worry Muzi said

they are both safe. Her worry is to get Daniella's parents here. So please is there a way we can....."

Cab driver: "I was charging their phones in the car just in case I needed to call someone."

Kay: "Good thinking there."

Portia: "Let's hope they do not have passwords on their phones."

Kian: "Busi's phone doesn't have a password."

Portia: "I left her grandfather's business card at home. So I don't have any means to communicate with her parents."

Sam: "Let's try the phones first."

Junior and the cab driver went to get the phones. When they came back we were lucky because her phone didn't have a password. You see what is so bad about passwords; you will just die because your phone will be locked.

Kay and Portia took the liberty to call them while I went in to ask Muzi about her condition.

Muzi: "She has gained consciousness but we still do not know what to give her because we do not have her medical records here. She had a bad asthma attack so any wrong medication will be vital."

Kian: "Hopefully the parents will come back to us soon."

Before he could answer Kay came in wearing his regalia too.

Kay: "They told me the medication she is using. Kian, please excuse us."

I just left the room

Advertisement

when I went to my wife's room they were ready to take her to the theatre. I was panicking while she was calm.

Busi: "Please calm down or else I will not allow you to come to theatre."

Kian: "Not happening, my love. I will be filming everything. I am not panicking I am being a caring husband."

She laughed.

Busi: "Okay caring husband let's do this."

Kian: "Yes baby let's do this."

We had waited for so long for our daughter but now that she was just around the corner I didn't know how to feel. I took her hand as they wheeled her out. I was praying all the way. I know I was not a prayer person but I was going to pray all the way.

Kian: "Baby, are you okay?"

Busi: "If I hear one more word from you about me being okay I will freak out."

Kian: "Okay my love I have stopped."

Even the nurse laughed at me.

Busi: "I love you okay. If anything happens please take care of the baby."

Kian: "Do not even as much as come to think about this because I will make sure you wake up and I will do the honours of killing you myself."

We both laughed.

Busi: "Baby I thought you were in love with me."

Kian: "I am more in love than you think."

When we got to the theatre we went through the hygiene process then it started. They only gave her an injection to numb the pain while operating.

Kian: "Is it painful?"

Busi: "I don't feel anything I think I will feel it when the numbness is gone."

Kian: "I love you."

She smiled and giggled.

Busi: "I love you more."

I didn't want to see them cutting my wife so it was better when I was concentrating on her and talking to her helped me calm down.

After a while I heard a small cry and my eyes just watered. I was in love with the cry only before I even met my daughter.

They gave her to the mother; I looked at my wife who was crying too.

Kian: "She is so beautiful, thank you my chuckle dove for this."

Busi: "Yes she is very beautiful. I love you my two beautiful people."

Kian: "I am not beautiful I am not a girl."

We both laughed. Before I could even hold my baby they asked me to cut the cord then she was wheeled away in an incubator.

I kissed my wife passionately.

Kian: "I love you."

I was told to leave the room as they were about to close her and clean up. I left the room a happy man. When I got to the waiting room I was pretending to have a sad face.

Portia: "Please tell me it's not bad news."

Kay: "Do not keep us waiting."

I couldn't help it I just smiled.

Kian: "Kialla is here and very beautiful just like my wife."

Kay: "She is my daughter."

We laughed

Pa: "You almost gave us a heart attack."

Baba: "I am a grandfather."

He had glittery eyes. I could tell because he avoided eye contact.

Sam: "Baba, are you crying?"

Baba: "A man does not cry. There is something in my eye."

We laughed. While we were like that Daniella's parents came in that's when I remembered her.

Kay: "Thank you for coming so fast and I am so sorry for what happened."

Lady: "She only gets attacks when she is panicking. I wish there is something we could do about that but we tried everything."

Man: "Where is my pumpkin?"

Okay, he was so serious if Kay scared me to pee my pants this man scared me to death. I would die of death I tell you. Thanks God I was not married to his daughter.

Kay: "She is stable now resting and her bubble self."

Lady: "Forgive my husband he is also like that when he panics."

Man: "Tee you have a death wish."

She smiled and pinched him. He then softened up. What's up with men who were scared of their wives? Was I like that?

Maybe I was, don't tell my wife.

I took them to her room.

Daniella: "Daddy, mommy you didn't have to come."

Man: "I had to my pumpkin."

Okay I was really not needed there I was intruding. I left them there while I went back to the others. Kialla was as strong as a horse. She could breathe on her own. When they were wheeled to her room I couldn't help it but smile. I was a happy man

Everyone was happy it was one big happy family you would swear we never fought at all. My daughter was going to be spoiled. I was observing the way people were so happy and reacted to the news.

She was under hygiene supervision so no visitors for a few days for her. It was only my wife and I allowed. Uncle Muzi and Uncle Kay used their positions to see her. Don't tell them but they took as many pictures as possible.

Kian: "Kialla is seriously messing with my food."

I said watching her tiny mouth squashing my wife's breast. She just smiled.

Busi: "Leave my daughter alone."

Kian: "You see I make beautiful babies?"

Busi: "My genes are strong too."

Kian: "So tell me we are going to have four more of these cuties."

She giggled.

Busi: "You listened when I said I wanted five kids."

Kian: "Yes my love, I listen to every detail. I even know the sound of your snore."

Busi: "Baby!!!. You are a weirdo."

Kian: "Your weirdo my love."

Busi: "Yes, I love you and our Kialla very much."

It was late when the family left I was not going to leave my family. I refused point blank up until Kay arranged for something comfortable for us, packs of marrying into royal family, not literally but metaphorically.

Busi: "Baby, wake up I am in pain."

I tried to register where I was then I jumped from the couch I was sleeping on.

Kian: "What is it?"

Busi: "I am in pain."

I pressed the bell because I was not sure what to do.

Kian: "I am so sorry my love, please hold on."

I was squeezing her hand and kissing her in the process. The nurse came just after a few minutes.

Nurse: "Mrs Coetzee what is happening."

Kian: "She is in pain; please do something."

Nurse: "I am not allowed to increase her dose we will have to wait for the doctor."

Kian: "When is the doctor coming?"

Nurse: "I don't k....."

Busi: "Ouch!"

I was seriously losing my patients I just called Kay before I did something I was going to regret.

Kian: "When are you coming here?"

Kay: "A hello Kian will do you good and take you a long way."

I didn't have time to chit-chat.

Kian: "Busi is not okay and they do not want to give her medication."

Kay: "What?"

Nurse: "I didn't....."

Kian: "Was I talking to you? I am talking to her doctor."

Kay: "Leave her alone. We are coming now."

When I dropped the call the nurse had pleading eyes.

Nurse: "Please sir I need this job I"

Kian: "I just called her doctor because I wanted her checked nothing else so if you can't help it's not your fault. Just relax and go back to your work."

Nurse: "Thank you sir."

She left. I kept talking to my wife assuring her that all will be well.

Kian: "I love you baby and all the pain will go away soon."

Busi: "I am hungry but I can't eat because of the pain."

I took her to my arms trying to calm her down. After some time her parents came in.

Kay: "What is happening princess?"

Kian: "She is in pain."

Portia: "Do something look at her."

Kay: "I am coming."

He went outside and came back with the doctor, they excused us then they attended to her. I was pacing up and down the corridor.

Portia: "She is going to be fine

Advertisement

do not worry."

Kian: "I hope so because I do not want to lose my wife. I do not even want to begin to think of a life without her."

Portia: "Do not even entertain that idea son."

Kian: "I am trying."

Portia: "I never carried a child but I believe the pain was bound to happen after the c-section because if you give birth normal you feel the pain first. I am just saying my assumption."

Kian: "Your assumption is understandable that's a little relief."

We sat there for years and years up until Kialla was doing grade 5. Just kidding but it seemed that way to us. We even had some family members present.

Kian: "What happened to the Celes?"

I was making conversation with Portia because I was tired of the quite.

Portia: "She didn't even sleep here. The family wanted her family doctor to look at her so they flew her to Cape Town in their private jet."

Kian: "How rich are they."

I was just lost of words because they looked simple when I saw them the previous night.

Portia: "Let me say the Thebes and Cele combined because they are one family now can rule this country now without even a blink."

Kian: "What?!!"

Portia: "Not everything came easy though so if you want to be like that something has to give. They all started from the ground. Thank God the kids took their parent's footsteps. Look at Daniella she followed suite."

Kian: "Okay now it makes me feel like I am the Hiltons."

Portia: "The what?"

Kian: "Never mind just thinking out loud. They looked simple to me."

Portia: "Just because to them money is nothing. That is why all of them have charity organisations in their names. Her Uncles were the wild ones in fact two of them but since they settled down there is calm and they do wonders in the community."

Kian: "Wow."

That is all I managed to say. After some time of some more quite Kay came back looking very tired but not defeated.

Kay: "They didn't stitch her properly yesterday. Muzi was busy with Daniella so he was not there to make sure that happened. I am suing the doctor who did that."

Portia: "Kay."

Kian: "Is she okay now?"

Kay: "Yes."

Kian: "Is she going to live?"

Kay: "Yes."

Kian: "So there is no need to sue because Busi wouldn't like that. As long as they are fine what more should we cry for?"

Kay: "As much as I want to dispute that you are right."

Portia: "Yes he is right."

Kian: "Can I go see them?"

Kay: "Yes you may but do not wake her up. After a few minutes I want you out of here. Your brothers should take you home to bath."

We laughed I was very reluctant but I had to look fresh for my girls. My girls came home after a week and four days in the hospital.

Kian: "I am happy that you are home."

Portia: "Are you sure that you are going to manage?"

Busi: "We have to try mom because we are parents now. You are helping us more during the day so we should be fine."

Portia: "If you say so."

There was sarcasm in her voice.

Kian: "We will be fine Mrs P."

Portia: "Anything you need you....."

Kian: "We will call you and make sure that we even tell you when she has a cold."

We all laughed

Portia: "Do not be smart with me."

We laughed and let our daughter settle in. My daughter was an angel in the afternoon but during the night it was a different story. She would cry nonstop. Busi began to withdraw. She was always unhappy and stressed, more like depressed.

Busi: "Kian, take your child away from me."

She said that when I got in from the bathroom. She had been crying the entire time I was taking a bath.

Kian: "What is wrong with you?"

Busi: "No ask your daughter what is wrong with her. I am supposed to rest at night but no she is busy sucking me dry and crying."

My wife was even a mess. Kialla even started rejecting her milk. I had to call for help.

When Portia and Kay came I was stressed myself.

Portia: "When did this start?"

Busi: "Not long."

Kian: "Baby, tell the truth. It started from the day we came home."

Them: "What?"

Kian: "She begged me not to tell you but now it's becoming worse."

Kay: "You should have told us sooner because she has PND."

Kian: "What?!"

Portia: "It's normal it affects some women after birth but it's not deadly; but then she might have to bottle feed from now on."

Busi: "That's good because I will have to go and start work maybe I will work night shifts."

Kay: "What?"

Busi: "I am tired Kay."

Okay this was not my wife talking.

Kian: "Please excuse us."

Kay: "We need to make sure we take her to the doctor in the morning."

They left with Kialla.

Kian: "Baby, whatever it is we will face it together please do not do this to us."

Busi: "I am tired Kian."

Kian: "Tired of what."

Busi: "Of everything. I just want to be a mother to a normal child, is it too much to ask for?"

Kian: "Our daughter is normal she will be fine. We will find help for you, for us."

Busi: "Easy to say for you because you are not in my shoes."

Kian: "Trust me I feel your pain because I stay up with you all night then I have to go to class or go to work dog tired."

Busi: "If you didn't im....."

Kian: "What did you want to say?"

Busi: "Nothing, I want to sleep."

I was defeated. Kay was worried too.

Kay: "She will be fine I just wish you had told me earlier because now is far gone but she will be okay."

Kian: "She said I didn't have to."

Portia: "You know how stubborn your wife is."

Kay: "We will have to take Kialla to....."

He didn't finish it because I was not going to allow that even if it was going to be for a little while.

Kian: "Not happening I better ask for leave days from work."

Portia: "What about school?"

Kian: "Ghost will help me."

Kay: "You are not going to burden that boy. It's your final year."

Kian: "I will manage I said I wanted to be a father and a husband so I have to enjoy the pleasant and unpleasant parts."

Portia: "If you say so but remember we are always here for you." Kian: "Thank you very much."

We took my wife to the doctor and antidepressants were given to her. I took care of both my babies. I had never prayed my entire life the way I prayed for my family. She went back to her normal self. Kian: "I am glad to see you back to normal."

Busi: "Was I not normal?" She was giggling

Kian: "You were my love but you know what I mean."

Her facial expression changed afterward.

Busi: "Kian, I am leaving....."

What the.

40

Kian: "I thought you were doing better. What is wrong?"

Busi: "You are my husband I now know you better I knew you were going to be worked up. Kian you should know me by now."

Kian: "I know you and you want to leave us now."

Busi: "Who told you I am leaving you?"

Kian: "But you....."

Busi: "That is why I said I know you better than you think. I wanted you to wet your pants because you do not wait for the whole information."

Kian: "Sorry then, I am listening."

Busi: "This place is not working. I feel suffocated here. I am leaving to the farm. I don't know how we are going to do it concerning your job and school work but if I stay here one more day I will be committed to a mental institution before the end of the day."

Kian: "Okay I hear you. Can we perhaps look for another house?"

Busi: "You see you are not listening to me. I didn't say the house I said this place. Not this apartment. The whole place, as

in Gauteng, you may buy a house in Sandton but still I would feel suffocated so I want to go to the farm to regroup. I want to build a bond with your family; our family and my baby in the process. I lost 6 months already now I need to make up for that.”

Kian: “I do not want to lose you my wife; I also want to know my daughter well.”

Busi: “You are not losing us. Never, not in a million years. We will make it work what do you think?”

Kian: “When are you planning to go and for how long?”

Busi: “Even today we can go for how long it will depend on how fast I can heal.”

Kian: “You are making things difficult for me now.”

Busi: “Just think about it then. I will give you a week to sort that out so that you won’t say I am a detector wife.”

We both laughed

Kian: “You will never be a detector wife. Kialla what do you say? Is mommy a dictator?”

I saw her smile.

Kian: “Baby look she smiled at us.”

Busi: “You are imagining things now.”

We both laughed

Kian: “Never I swear I did see a smile there and it was this beautiful.”

She laughed; I looked at her beautiful smile and kissed her passionately. I had missed my wife she was back to me but she was going to be far away from me how was I going to cope?

Busi: “Do not over-think love, we will be fine. Kialla needs this too.”

Kian: “Who said I am over-thinking?”

I said with a smile in my voice. She laughed at me.

Busi: “I know you, you are my husband remember.”

Kian: “Okay wifey let’s do this and see if it will work.”

She screamed and jumped into my arms. She was the wife I knew and loved. I was going to give her what she wanted because I knew she needed a break. She was still young and needed her freedom as well if I didn’t give her that she was going to think marriage was a prison.

Busi: “Thank you daddy dearest. We love you.”

Kian: “Not so fast there are conditions.”

Busi: “I knew it was too good to be true.”

Kian: “Wait you haven’t heard the conditions.”

Busi: "If they are ridiculous then I would rather chose the mental Hospital"

We both laughed.

Kian: "But baby."

Busi: "Say it already and I will answer you."

Kian: "You answer your phone all times when I call if not I am driving all the way to pick you up."

Busi: "What if....."

Kian: "I am not done and it's nonnegotiable. I will be coming home every Friday because I do not work on a weekend. Schools are about to close so I will be spending the holiday with you. I will ask for leave of absence. When I finish writing my finals I am taking you on that well deserved honeymoon and Kialla is remaining behind because she is not breast feeding anymore. Then from then we will sit down and discuss a way forward about the future. I do not want to see you flash your career down the drain."

Busi: "All is clear and I accept all your conditions. I am going because I need to feel better for you. If I go on as if nothing happened I will break down again and who knows maybe there will never be a comeback from that one."

Kian: "I love you for that my wife. I know things might be tough but just hold for us. We still need to make a basketball team."

She blushed.

Kian: "Come on baby you still blush."

Busi: "I am not."

Kian: "Come here."

Ghost: "No, no, no, no

Advertisement

you cannot be subjecting my daughter to this. PG 13 years not 13 month."

We laughed

Kian: "Where are you coming from?"

Ghost: "I went to fill in the release forms I will not be playing till my final exam paper so I made it official today."

Busi: "That is a good idea then you will take care of my husband."

Ghost: "Where are you going and do not even think about taking my daughter with you?"

We laughed

Busi: "Come on her daddies needs to pass so I am not going to let her disturb them."

Ghost: "In that case I give you permission."

Kian: "These are my kids so do not even give permission to them because it will be invalid."

Ghost: "I am the head of this family."

Busi: "You go ghost. Please take care of my husband, if ever anything happens to him I will murder you."

Ghost: "Wowowowo I am too young to die. You Kian if anything happens to you I will kill you myself."

We laughed

Kian: "Leave me alone you have to listen to my wife she is instructing you."

Ghost: "If married man act like you then I am not marrying Nono."

Kian: "Why?"

Ghost: "Look at you, listening to what your wife is saying."

Kian: "I will tell Nono."

Busi: "Leave him my love I will be with Nono in a few months before I come back."

Ghost: "You will be in the farm?"

Busi: "Yes, where did you think I was going?"

Ghost: "I take back what I said I will take care of your husband ma'am."

We laughed hard with my wife.

Busi: "Okay ghost."

Ghost: "So when are you going?"

Busi: "We haven't discussed it yet but we will give daddy a week to process that he won't see us daily then we will be off."

Ghost: "Please do not find a boyfriend for my daughter."

Kian: "I already accepted the bride price for her."

Ghost: "You will die young Kian."

We laughed I took my daughter for her bath and mid-day nap. We were doing everything together since she became better. I loved how she took care of her. Sometimes I worried about her. Going to the farm was really going to help. I wanted my wife back. I was going to be lost without her.

Busi: "Are you two okay there?"

My daughter just jumped for joy when she saw her mother. She even forgot that her mother once rejected her. Kids they easily forgive and forget.

Kian: "We are almost done. Do you want to help?"

Busi: "I will look for her changing clothes."

Kian: "We have to go to your parents and tell them about your travel."

Busi: "Yes my love we will go tomorrow for now I want to spend time with my two favourite people."

Kian: "Mmmmmm I can't wait. Remember tomorrow I have classes."

Busi: "You will drop us there in the morning and collect us after class."

Kian: "Swell idea my love."

My wife was really back. We spent the day and evening together; she was the Busi I knew and loved. The following morning I drove them home on my way to school. It was a detour but at least I knew they were safe if I drove them.

Kay: "You see your madness drove my daughter crazy."

Busi: "Daddy!!"

We laughed.

Kian: "I am going to leave your granddaughter here and we will stay in the crazy people's hospital together."

Busi: "Baby, you are also laughing at me I will not come back to you."

Kian: "Baby."

Kay: "Yes, you are left alone."

Busi: "You too daddy I will not talk to you"

Kian: "Saves you right too."

We both laughed. If I had told you that I feared him before I would have seemed like a liar to you but hey we were close, Busi's situation brought us closer.

Portia: "What have you done to my baby?"

Busi: "Mommy they are ganging up on me."

Portia: "Boys."

Us: "Sorry ma'am."

We looked at each other and laughed. Busi and Portia laughed too.

Portia: "How are you my babies?"

Kian: "I will be late for class."

I kissed her cheeks and Kialla then left. I was a happy man. Classes were never a hustle since Ghost came into my life. We were not playing with Ghost because we wanted to finish with

a bang. I wanted him to be serious about Nono because it would mean I will have him in my life forever. I wanted that. Please don't tell him because I will be in trouble.

When I got to Kay's house my babies were eagerly waiting for me. Kialla even said a few words. Don't laugh at me but I swear I heard her say something.

Kay: "Busi told us about their move to the farm."

Kian: "Yes I didn't want them to go but I will for now."

Kay: "I think it is a good idea. They will be refreshed, I wanted to suggest it before but I thought princess wouldn't want to go to the Bundus."

Busi: "I love the farm I will be okay."

Portia: "All will be well my love. I am happy you are taking the initiative because it will also give Kian time to finish his studies."

Kay: "So when are you starting work?"

Busi: "After our honeymoon."

She said closing her face with her hands.

Portia: "What honeymoon. Didn't you go?"

Kian: "No it was just a weekend away."

Kay: "Oho, I will wait and see. You think you are romantic."

Kian: "Jealous is the root of all evil."

We laughed. After dinner I left with my family. When we got home we took our princess through her bedtime routine.

Kian: "Baby, I miss you."

I said going to her.

Busi: "I miss you too."

We haven't intimate for a while because of many reasons. I cupped her face and kissed her passionately.

Kian: "Graduation is too small baby can we prevent."

She laughed.

Busi: "You said your daughter is not going to be graduation."

Kian: "You are the one you gave her."

She giggled

Busi: "I will use the injection because I want a proper honeymoon this time around. I also want my baby to have me to herself for some time she deserves my love. I can't afford to neglect her."

Kian: "I will withdraw for now because I can't wait for tomorrow I am exploding."

We laughed and got busy. The party was lit. If I thought I loved my wife then I was more than in love that particular day. After a week I took them to the farm with a heavy heart.

Kian: "Please keep safe for me my babies."

Busi: "We will. We miss you already. Please call often and visit."

She had a heavy heart too with tears threatening.

Kian: "I love you my wife and I will always do. This is just temporary."

Busi: "Yes it is go before we change our mind."

Kian: "I was prolonging hoping you would."

Busi: "Not happening."

I hugged them for the last time. I watched them as I drove off with a heavy heart. It was like I had been literally ripped apart. I really loved my wife. Was it possible to love a person that much?

Before I knew it I was writing my final exams. My babies were doing well and they seemed happy in the farm. Busi was even gaining weight which she loved even though I was mocking her. She was talking about the gym when she got back home. There was nothing I lacked I was just a happy man, I was in love.

Epilogue

If anyone had told me that I would be married during my third year at varsity, a father on my final year and a loving wife in the process I would have laughed in their faces. Well I was a very happy man. I saw our relationship grew from nothing to a wonderful thing.

“Baby, we are late while you are busy day dreaming.”

She was still my loving wife. We were still growing stronger.

Kian: “We are allowed to be late and this is our day.”

Busi: “Please tell your child to stay in the stomach because I will not have a Graduation situation.”

We laughed the name stayed longer than I thought.

“Daddy, Kialla wants to go.”

That was my angel coming in looking like she was going for her own wedding. She was turning four in a few months. We were having our fourth anniversary.

Kian: “Okay my princess we will be going now.”

Kialla: “When is my brother coming?”

You heard right we were having a boy in just few days. My wife had insisted even when she knew she was due any minute. What can I say what my girls wanted my girls got.

Busi: "Mommy is going to be done soon my princess."

Kian: "Did I tell you how beautiful you are my Kialla?"

She giggled. She had her mother's giggle and I loved it. I was very lucky.

Kialla: "You are silly daddy. Thank you that I am beautiful."

Her speech was still under construction. I scooped her sprung her up and kissed her.

Kian: "I love you my princess now run and tell granny to fix your flower."

Kialla: "Okay daddy, mommy you are slow."

She said running along leaving us laughing.

Kian: "How is our boy doing?"

Busi: "He is behaving today because I wanted to threaten him."

We laughed as I took her to my arms.

Kian: "Did I tell you how beautiful you are today?"

Busi: "Yes you did my husband countless times but I never get tired of hearing it."

Kian: "Come here."

I said enveloping her

Busi: "Your son is making me ugly."

Kian: "You will never be ugly to me my love. To me you are the most beautiful girl alive. No point of correction beautiful woman. I love you baby. Do you know that you and I are coming from far away there?"

She laughed

Busi: "Yes my love and there were times when we thought all is lost. I do not know about you but as for me I would do it all over again. I would make all the mistakes and the good times we shared. Remember when I almost got admitted to the loony hospital."

It was a good laughing matter but then I was really scared of losing my wife. She couldn't even connect with our daughter. The farm helped her a lot.

Kian: "You know what Ghost said when you went to the farm for those months."

Busi: "I can only imagine."

She said with a laugh in her voice.

Kian: "He said he never took you as a farm girl. He said the way you were brought up, the fact that you can get anything and anyone you wanted then you couldn't survive in a farm."

Busi: “Well have you ever heard of a saying ‘do not judge a book by its cover’ well I am an open book although the cover seems fancy.”

We both laughed

Kian: “So can you judge this book?”

Busi: “I know you my husband I can judge this book and no boo you are not getting some. Your daughter is waiting for us, our guest are ready so no you will get some when this is all over.”

Kian: “You are not fair. I am your first born but you are neglecting me.”

Busi: “You kept me up all night.”

Kian: “I can’t help it when you are this yummy.”

She giggled

Busi: “You will get my attention all of it tonight.”

Kian: “I will be dead of thirst.”

Busi: “I will kiss it better for you. Come here my handsome husband who I love dearly.”

I loved my wife dearly I was never going to trade that for anything else in the world. Well after her PND we became fine when they got back from the farm. I was more than happy that

she recovered. We were lucky because some families never recover from that.

We graduated with ghost, what can I say we were determined to make it and it truly happened we went out with a big bang. Everyone was proud of us. My wife got a job n Johannesburg I also stayed and worked for Uncle Muzi but we frequented the farm because she said when we retired we were going to make that place our home.

My family loved her more for that.

“Trust the couple of the moment to make a grand entrance.”

Kian: “Leave us alone baba.”

Baba: “I am just thinking aloud don’t mind me.”

Tata: “Makoti

Advertisement

you look stunning.”

Kian: “What about me?”

Pa: “She is complimenting you, without her you would look uglier than before.”

Kian: “Ouch, what happened to the love.”

They were laughing. We had bought a house because we didn’t want our kids growing up in some apartments.”

Junior: "Your house is beautiful bro."

Kian: "If you were not Minister and Ministress of tourism you would have seen it a long time ago."

We laughed, they had been travelling a lot since the wedding; so they were back home to settle down and start a family.

Junior: "There is no such word as ministress."

Kian: "Words get added to the dictionary every time."

Busi: "But not this one honey."

Kian: "Whose side are you on?"

She laughed leaving me with the guys while she mingled. The event started my father in law insisted because he wanted to see his princess happy.

I was not complaining much because I had a happy wife. When the event was about to end I heard screams from the bathroom and I knew it was my wife. I ran like a mad man.

Kian: "Baby, what is going on?"

Busi: "My water just broke and I am in pain."

Kian: "When did the pains start?"

Busi: "They started around midday."

Kian: "Busi, why didn't you tell me?"

I was panicking but she was looking calm

Busi: "I am still far apart but I know now that he is coming today, I do not know why your kids are like this."

I just smiled.

Kian: "I am taking you to the hospital."

I didn't wait for her answer I just scooped her, told Thabo to drive us. I was busy at the back re-assuring her that all will be well. My phone rang it was Kay

Kian: "We are on our way to the hospital."

He didn't ask more I told him which one then he followed. When we got there they attended to her immediately. This time around there was no complication so they were going to try natural birth at first.

Busi: "It hurts."

Kian: "I am sorry my love."

She was hurting me while squeezing my hand, it was slowly turning green. Don't tell her I said that. Before long our boy was crying his lungs out.

I was a happy dad. Thank God my boy took after me. We couldn't have a pretty boy now could we? I was just thinking

out loud. They took him away after I cut the cord; I was excused as they wanted to clean my wife.

Kay: "What is happening?"

Kian: "My boy is here."

Portia: "Thank you Jesus."

Pa: "Khumalo is on his way to the police station."

Kian & Kay: What?"

Junior: "Sambulo went on a beating spree and now he was arrested."

Kian: "Beating spree for what?"

Junior: "That douchebag hurt Belinda so he went after him."

Kay: "What?!"

Kian: "How can he leave his pregnant wife to fight another woman's battles?"

Junior: "Apparently the wife sent him."

Kian: "what?"

I was not going to entertain that.

Tata: "Nono is busy stuffing herself on the other hand.

Apparently her run away groom turned up today and he wants the wedding to go ahead as planned."

Kian: "How could ghost do that?"

Kay: "I am going to kill that good for nothing excuse of a man who once called himself my son in law."

I didn't even want to comment because I was.....

Portia: "Here is the doctor."

That's the only thing she said because she was hurt. Her kids were going through a tough time. I left them there talking to him while I went to look for my family.

Kian: "Hay my love."

She smiled and I fell in love again.

Busi: "How are to you."

Kian: "I am a happy man. How is anniversary?"

We both laughed

Busi: "So my kids have names now?"

Kian: "I am not the one who said they should come in weird times. So yes he is going to be Keith Anniversary Coetzee"

Busi: "My son is not anniversary."

We laughed and I kissed her. This was my family. I was going to treasure them forever. We might have been through a lot but

we were going to conquer all because we had each other. We were both “Deeply Scarred” but we found each other.

Kian: “I love you my babies.”

Busi: “We love you more.”

I put them in my chest and I was at home at last.

.....**The End**.....

Thank you guys for downloading this book from my site please keep visiting <https://novelsguru.com/> for supporting me and also don't forget to share it with your friends.

Dear Friends please download these books direct from <https://novelsguru.com/> bookmark this site for latest African books, and also supporting me Thanks.

For daily latest books please visit <https://novelsguru.com/>

And also visit my Facebook page, and like and share it

<https://www.facebook.com/groups/3345453369055623>